北京领域 雅思口语 <u>剑12</u>

慎小嶷◎编著

Ideas for a variety of topic areas Easy and direct answers Less common and idiomatic phrases A full range of pronunciation features A wide range of structures

多年教学实战经验

切实针对中国考生难点

RRS

英音 朗读

Pat's Ten-Day Step-by-Step Guide to the Speaking Test

The speaking section is often the most daunting part of the IELTS Test. Ironically, many IELTS candidates perform poorly in the speaking section because they over-prepare for it. The "error-free" templates and picture-perfect "model answers" committed to memory make the entire preparation process a strategic failure — few people would try to learn the piano if they were only interested in playing the Liszt Sonata in B minor, right?

A Message from the Author

用真实海外英文口语剖析IELTS口语题库





SPEAKING

All of you wish to use English freely during the DELTS Speaking Test, but making this wish a reality remains a puzzle for most of you out there.

雅思口语剑12版 EIFIEL TS TAK

東圣电子书

慎小嶷/编著



Pat's Ten-Day Step-by-Step Guide



本书正文按照天数划分内容,在十天里紧密结合《剑 12》对最新雅思口语考试的应试策 略进行了详尽的剖析,并结合《剑 12》的考题特点提供了富有针对性的语言点讲解。

本书作者 Pat 老师有多年的英语国家生活经历,在使用地道英语表达对 IELTS 口语题库进 行透析的同时,还对中国考生容易陷入的误区进行了非常中肯的提醒。词汇学习手册汇集了地 道口语常用表达法的精华,考生可以随身携带、随时学习。

本书的音频部分均由英籍专业人士朗读,便于考生模仿和练习。

本书作者对于真实的英语国家生活和中国学生的口语瓶颈均有极为深刻的了解、并著有畅 销书《十天突破雅思写作》和《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》。

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

十天突破雅思口语:剑12版/慎小嶷编著. --7版. 一北京, 机械工业出版社, 2017.5

ISBN 978 -7 -111 - 56993 -0

1.①+··· Ⅰ.①填··· Ⅱ.①IELTS -口语-自学参考 资料 N. ①H319.9

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2017) 第 102222 号

机械工业出版社(北京市百万庄大街22号 邮政编码100037) 策划编辑:孟玉琴 责任编辑:于 雷 田 旭 版式设计:张文贵 责任印制:常天培 保定市中画美凯印刷有限公司印刷

2017年7月第7版·第1次印刷 184mm × 260mm · 28.375 印张 · 4 插页 · 686 千字 标准书号: ISBN 978-7-111-56993-0 定价: 72.50元 (赠速查手册)

凡购本书,如有缺页,倒页,脱页,由本社发行部调换 电话服务 服务咨询热线:(010) 88361066 读者购书热线:(010) 68326294 (010) 88379203 封面无防伪标均为盗版



网络服务 机工官网: www.empbook.com 机工官博; weibo. com/cmp1952 教育服务网: www. cmpedu. com 金书网: www.golden-book.com

IELTS 口语的"脉"

考生是谁

对 the IELTS Speaking Test 的持续跟踪让 Pat 深感在考场里真实出现的雅思□ 试话题极为广泛。事实上,它们几乎已经涵盖到了英美日常生活里的所有领域。

以2017 年6 月22 日下午为例,就轮换出现了从 a TV series that you like 到 an invention that changed the world 等跨度很大的 28 道卡片话题。如果再加上当天出现的第一、三部分考题经过排列组合后的可能性则更会远多于此。

与 Cambridge ESOL 出题者们明显"有备而来"相比,多数国内口语考生 (希望您是一个例外)则仍处在采取顽固拖延战术或者根本就没有战术、慌不择路 的"非正规军"状态。下面的官方统计数据残酷展现了这支"非正规军"在 IELTS Speaking Test 中是怎样被剑桥击溃的:

Mean Band Score for the Most Frequent Countries or Regions of Origin (Source: www.ielts.org)

Place of Origin	Speakin	Exempt Origin	Speaking
Germany	7.3	Greece	6. 5
Philippines	6.9	🔁 - Calombia	6.4
Nigeria	6. 8	L egypt	6.4
Sri Lanka	电子形结 6.7 更多电	全为免费提供请勿出售 引持教师将一句回歌nic Republic of	6.4
France	6.6	Italy	6.4
Malaysia	6.6	Mexico	6.4
Russian Federation	6.6	Brazil	6.3
Spain	6. 6	Sudan	6. 2

			续表
Place of Origin	Speaking	Place of Origin	Speaking
Hong Kong	6. 1	Vietnam	5.8
Indonesia	6. 1	Korea, Republic of	5.7
Jordan	6. 1	Iraq	5.6
Nepal	6. 1	Kuwait	5.6
Pakistan	6. 1	Libya	5.6
Bangladesh	6	Saudi Arabia	5.6
Taiwan	6	Uzbekistan	5.6
India	5.9	Japan	5.5
Thailand	5.9	Qatar	5.5
Kazakhstan	5.8	Turkey	5.5
Oman	5.8	China(People's Republic of)	5.4
Syrian Arab Republic	5.8	Arab Emirates	5.3

结论 在 IELTS 考生最多的 40 个国家或地区中,中国大陆考生的口语成绩 平均值(mean band score)仅高于 United Arab Emirates(阿联西),而低于其他 全部亚、非、欧国家和地区,也包括不少文化被普遍认为比中国文化更加"内向" 的国家。很显然,导致这种分数差距的根本原因并不是缺少肢体语言,也不是缺乏 目光交流,而只能是实打实的语言能力问题。咱们也许真的应该反思一下:我们是 不是一直都把错了 IELTS 口语的脉?

考官是谁

我们生活在"阿尔法狗"(AlphaGo)已经击败了人类棋圣,无人驾驶汽车(self-driving cars)的综合表现正全面赶超人类驾驶汽车的时代,但 IELTS 口试却仍然坚持了"人—人对话"的形式。主办方 British Council 这样坚持的利和弊都很明显:考生在今后的海外留学生活里将要进行的也是"人—人对话",所以 IELTS 口试可以更准确地反映出考生与当地人面对面的实际交流能力 (face-to-face

communication skills)。但另一方面, "人—人对话"就意味着 examiner 的个人 素质有可能会对考生的表现产生影响。

在中国的互联网上,雅思考官往往会被描述成黑洞般的暗物质。"印度大妈"、 "光头杀手"、"灭绝师太"、"5 分中年男"、"扔身份证的不耐烦 MM","像 Nikita 里面一个 killer 的冷面 SG","热情、然并卵的笑面虎老爷爷"、"拒绝 eye contact 的杀马特","酷似 Breaking Bad 里 Mr. White 的眼镜蜀黍"……国内同学们关于 口语考官的种种轶闻已经足以写成一本精彩的武侠小说 (a swordplay and chivalry novel),但这些故事的盛传,恰恰证明了多数考官其实都是普通人。

事实上,不仅是雅思口试,到目前为止,世界上的任何一种口试(包括求职时 要做的 interview)都难以实现绝对的标准化。IELTS确实难以排除 examiners 评分 不负责任的可能性,但口语考官们总体来说还是敬业的。Pat 自己在中国从事雅思 培训期间接触到了十几位现任和前任的 IELTS 口语 examiners,我可以非常肯定地 说他们/她们无一例外都是"正常",而且,相对于英美社会的整体情况而言, 客观地说这些考官的平均文化素质是不错的。如果连这些人您看了都觉着"不顺 眼",那么真等到您到国外长期学习、生活时恐怕就得"大跌眼镜"了。

而且,在评分能力方面,他们 / 她们全都体现出了下面的5个共同点:

They are native English speakers.

这确保了考官们能够使用并且充分理解被 native speakers 普遍接受的英文, 但同时这也意味着他们 / 她们也许无法理解"罕见"的英文。

2 They at least have an undergraduate degree.

您肯定知道 degree 和 diploma 的区别,其实口语考官们的整体教育背景在英 美社会中还是不算低的,但长成什么样儿那是人家的自由……

3 They have Teaching English as a Foreign Language (TEFL) qualifications.

这个要求说明口语考官们是把从事语言相关工作当成自己 career path (职业 发展方向) 的重要部分,所以多数考官的心态其实并不像传说中的"口语杀手" 打分那么"潇洒"。

Output to get re-certified every two years.

您也许不知道考官资质每两年都是需要再次重新认证的,除非彻底不想干了, 否则一般没必要让自己的打分多次被负责 remark 的 senior examiner 推翻。

5 They have at least three years of English teaching experience.

这一条确保了多数考官对孩子们的"症结"还是能适当有所体谅的,但这同时 也往往意味着考官对常见的"技巧"其实玩儿得比你还熟。

结论 IELTS speaking 的本质是和你的考官用英语进行一次尽可能充分 的交流。对口语考官的过度恐惧或者过度谄媚(butter up the examiner)都是没 有必要的,您只需要像尊重其他人一样去尊重考官就够了,考官注意力的真正 焦点其实是你的语言。

怎样使用本书收效最大

正是基于以上这些原因,在创作本书的全过程里,Pat 始终希望能够把在我 身边的英语母语者们每天正使用着的真实口语和他们 / 她们的实际生活状态介绍 给中国同学们。坦白地说,写这样一本书并不轻松,因为在分析每个 IELTS 话题 时,我其实都是在不自量力地扮演着一个"文化传播者"的角色。

令 Pat 感到欣慰的,除了中国考生朋友们越洋寄来的 thank-you notes 之外,还有下面这个令人振奋的事实:

《剑 12》出版之前已经开始在中国大陆发行的《十天口语》上一版里 Pat 着力推荐的 a variety of, tend to, is supposed to, regularly, in-depth, attract, aimed at, atmosphere, puzzle, open-minded, exchange information, a good source of..., explore, preserve, insight, spot, layout... 等等实用表达均在《剑 12》文本里密集地现身。That's the best compliment a test-prep book author can possibly get, right?

对于备考时间比较充裕的同学, Pat 希望您能够经常翻阅您手中的这本书。 我可以肯定地说:本书里的每一句话都是自己用心写的,值得您花时间细读,看 这样的书不会浪费您宝贵的时间。即使只每次浏览三、五分钟,您也能获取一些 此时此刻正在英语国家被 native speakers 真实使用着的词句。出国之后您就会明 白:真实的英文口语其实是简洁有效的,反而比用来"唬人"的英语更好学。跟 native speakers 卖弄"大词"只能像跟一个思想传统的人炫耀你多么熟悉 *Fifty Shades of Grey* 一样不靠谱。

对于考试已经迫在眉睫的同学来说(Pat 深知这类心理素质"过好"的同学 虽然正在减少,但却永远不会彻底消失),请您立刻停止"拖延战术",登录 blog. sina. com. cn/ieltsguru打印出本月口语预测题,然后按照下面的顺序选读 本书: Day1 (esp. Question 2) → Day3 (通读) →Day4 (每一类里用熟1~2 个就够) → Day5 (第一节) → Day6 (至少把3个小测验练一练,并和音频 对比) →Day8 (不要背答案,但是应该熟悉高分答案的语言风格) → Day9 (第一节,了解高分答案的结构) → 本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇和短语速 查手册》里标星号的词汇和短语。

结论 充分了解每个月的出题动向是必要的,同时我们必须注意积累地道的英文表达,并对当代英美文化有适当的了解。只有这样,您才能踏踏实实地提高自己的英语交流能力。也只有这样,您才算是真正把住了 IELTS 口语的 "脉"。

VI

☆ 致谢

本书参与协助编写工作的人员有:李丹、朱燕林、杨津英、张俊兰、樊顺玲、于辉、 张洪霞、朱卡亚、冉继华、宋琪、李玉亚、孔庆桐、李广荣、王福利、苗春瑞、刘礼、 兰印玲、苏琴英、王玉丰、朱瑾瑾、苏锡武、张会分、李佩香、袁毅、朱达斌、朱露西、 孟平珍、卢朝臣、杨荣莲、孙国庆、智月仙、王丽沙、杨振国、孙晓荣、张智萍、王洪玲、 徐建英、余团林、刘国强、史凤华、冷江豫、赵焱、李玉凤、刘昭文、孙国栋、杨兴普、 田桂祥、李正其、朱文辉、李坤煌、李雄伟、林君凤、毛干斌、刘宝钗、李杰、刘建龙、 李云香、苏惠心、尚纯义。

My deepest appreciation goes to my parents and my sister Meg, without whom I wouldn't possibly have embarked upon this " cottage industry". Your loving and unwavering support means everything to me.

Special kudos goes to Ms Meng Yu-qin, the editor of this book, whose intelligence and resourcefulness make a real difference in the creation of this book.

Most of all, I wish to dedicate this book to the students who made up my classes in China. Their example has continually spurred me to keep working on this book. I hope it will be a nice reminder of our delightful time together.

小嶷

2017 年初夏写于新泽西

Pat 英文自序

Preface

The speaking section is often the most daunting part of the IELTS Test. Ironically, many IELTS candidates perform poorly in the speaking section because they overprepare for it. The "error-free" templates and picture-perfect "model answers" committed to memory make the entire preparation process a strategic failure — few people would try to learn the piano if they were only interested in playing the Liszt Sonata in B minor, right?

To achieve a high score in the speaking section of the IELTS Test, you must understand what the examiner realistically wants. Personal preferences vary when it comes to words, structures and concepts, but all examiners value spontaneity. It is fairly easy for them to spot thoughtless spouting of prepared answers, because there are few or no natural pauses in answers given by rote. In addition, candidates tend to hesitate noticeably when the examiner asks for further elaboration on a prepared response. This dramatic hesitation seriously erodes the candidate's credibility in proving English proficiency, which often results in score penalties.

Unlike many other preparation materials available for the speaking section of the IELTS Test, this book is not designed to be memorized by rote; rather, it is intended to develop the readers' spontaneous English conversation skills. Accordingly, all chapters are structured around subjects that are not only IELTS-oriented, but also current and thought-provoking. The perspective offered on each subject challenges you to think beyond its common treatment. Each subject is also presented with a one-step-beyond component, serving as a springboard for addressing related topics at a more sophisticated level.

IX

It is true that speaking a second language is partly a talent, but it is mostly a skill. It will, like any other skill, improve with practical guidance and continued practice. I encourage you to actively use the English and test-taking techniques you will learn from this book. That will not only help you retain what you learn but also make you a more confident and competent IELTS candidate.

Patrick Shen (a. k. a Pat)



IELTS 口语的"脉" Pat 英文自序

1 最真实的谎言

长期困扰中国口语考生的六个问题 / 2 Pat's Answers / 3

IELTS 口语的本质是什么? SIFIEL TS T

Part 1 的本质是什么? / 15 Part 2 的本质是什么? / 16 Part 3 的本质是什么? / 17 Part 1 考什么? / 18 Part 2 的答案完全可以合理、合法地合并 / 28 Part 3 考什么? / 29



British Council 提供的高分实例解析 / 35



Native Speakers 在口语交流当中真正使用的连接词 / 41

5 基础语法错误:勿以恶小而为之

必须努力纠正的4 类基础语法错误 / 49 雅思口语考试里到底有没有很特殊的句子? / 52

练出 decent 的发音 FIELTS

适合国内同学的英文单词发音测验 / 57 国内考生发音的 8 种常见错误 / 58



7 Part 1: 短兵相接

□语 Part 1 话题库索引 / 64 Part 1 素材工具箱 / 65



IELTS □试 Part 2 真题库索引 / 124 □语 Part 2 话题指南 / 125 Part 2 的一分钟思考时间里你应该做的事 / 127 作为 Native speakers,考官们喜欢什么样的答案? / 127



Part 3 高分答案的结构 / 297 British Council 提供的高分答案实例分析 / 298 熟悉高分答案结构 / 301

10 口语高分考生的共同点

i.

Pat回北京最爱做的事就是下馆子,除了因为自己是真正的吃货(I'm a foodie.) 之外,也因为在美国和加拿大的餐馆里实在没什么好吃的菜,生活久了很深刻的体会 就是享受肺、折磨胃。而英国莱嘛……更是出了名儿的不"给力",除了 fish 'n' chips o

有一次在北京的一家餐馆里,Pat突然发现英文莱单上很彪悍地写着"stir fly"(炒 苍蝇)。我完全被老板的勇气震撼了,心想正常人胆子再大也不至于连苍蝇都敢吃, 而且居然还是炒着吃。《舌尖上的中国》里绝对没介绍过这种怪异的做法(This bizarre "recipe" was absolutely not featured in A Bite of China.)。仔细研究 还有 Pat看到一家北京餐馆的菜单上对"干煸四季豆"这道菜的英文描述

竟然是: "This depsite is temporarily closed. Please check back later." 这显然 是因为餐馆老板在网上搜索这个菜的英文名称,但是网站却没有正常运行而得到的 不是答案的答案,属于真正的论约如 translation。

Pat还见到过"四喜丸子"被叫做 on ppy meatballs (四个快乐的肉球儿), "鸡肉"被翻译成 muscle,《一代宗师》里的"念念不忘"被译成 read, read and don't forget, 而中国的经典古语"知之为知之,不知为不知,是知也"竟被 翻译成: "Know is know. No know is no know. That's know?"

本书就献给这些可爱的 slip-ups。

No sweat.

The Ten-Day Series on IELTS

1 A. L. A. M. A.

Day



Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

Using lies as alibis Is the same game Played in different ways It's just a waste of time Made for gullible minds

℃ 7 7 3 6 长期困扰中国口语考生的六个问题 6 5 5



○ 怎样客观看待口试的 Predictions?



Pat's Answers

1. 口语考试是不是只能回答"积极"的答案? 口试是不是一定要回答 "新颖"的答案? (Do I have to sound positive or optimistic? Do I have to give the examiner completely original or creative answers?)

国内考生甚至一些培训教师普遍相信下面的错误观点。

📣 你不能给考官"I don't like...""Actually, I don't know much about...""Well, I disagree..."这类否定语气的答案。

J 你必须要给出非常有创意(original)、与众不同(unique)、引人入胜(engaging) 的答案才能拿高分。

我们来看看一个真实的口语考官是怎样理解这个问题的 (Clark: 29):

One important point to emphasize (强调) here is that the marking system does NOT include references to the following points: M. MEASIELTS THE

- * Interesting content
- Amusing or funny answers
- * Body language
- The truth *
- Appearance or dress

更加发人深思(thought-provoking)的是,这位考官同时还给出了自己的评分实例 (Ibid, 29): "I interviewed a young lady who was arrogant (傲慢的), impolite, impatient and quite rude - but I awarded this lady a score of 8 because her spoken English matched the descriptions in the marking system (评分体系) for band score 8."

像这样一个已经集所有讨厌于一身 (obnoxious, intolerable), 而且并没有为了讨好 考官而展示"事业线"(cleavage)的女士,因为英语说得并没有明显问题,还是从考官 那里拿走了口语8分的高分。显然,在真实考官的眼里,IELTS口试并不是"主要看气质" (It's not about whether the examiner finds the candidate attractive or not.) .

💶 Day 1

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

而 Pat 在北京时的同事, 口语考官 Martin Renner 就更加直白地说: "It's not what you say. It's how you say it."

两位货真价实的考官的肺腑之言完全符合 Pat 自己对学生口语成绩的长期跟踪调查:口语的分数,只看你的英语水平和答案是否具体、充实,和所谓的"别出心栽"或者是否"积极"完全没有关系。说得更直接一点:考官坐到口试的小房间里的任务不是考查智商,也不是做"心理分析",主办方交给他/她的唯一任务是要确定考生的英语口语水平到底怎样。我们需要做的,只是努力去说正确、流利的英文,但是实在没必要给自己再强加更多的条条框框了 (hard and fast rules)。

British Council 官方给出的这段话是对这个问题的解答最权威的结束语: "Examiners are only interested in your language and your ability to communicate. That is all they are assessing and judging."

2 口语考官的论义正依据什么? (How should I interpret the rating system?)

同学们都知道口语有四项评分标准,但是那个标准很学术,一般考生难以望其项背。 通过下面的这个表格,我们可以总结出一个更好理解的"草根版"口语评分标准。

Pat 总结的"草根版"雅思习试评分标准

		TEL	
	5分	6分 515	7分
	句子中经常出现不必要的	能说出完整的句	语速比较自然,
	停顿,而且缺乏口语的衔接,	子,但是每隔几句	有合理的衔接, 只
	还有些同学过度使用"er	一定会有不连贯的	在较少的地方由于
	""ah"这些 fillers, 甚	地方。有可能出现	思考答案出现了不
Fluency &	至中间出现长时间没话说	较长时间的令人尴	必要的停顿或者内
Coherence	"干在那儿" (get put on the	尬的停顿,但是次	容跳跃
流利度和	spot) 的尴尬情况。5 分得主	数不多	
连贯度	的另一个极端则是超级流畅,		
迁贝及	说话完全没有轻重缓急,		
	甚至已经听不出来喘气,看		
	不到眨眼,同时答案里却充斥		
	着像 moreover 这样在真实的		

4

Understanding the rules of the game

.

			(续表)
	5分	6分	7分
vin alem arri	英美生活里绝没有人说的 "奥特曼"连接词,这种考生 在说中文时都没有的灵异现象 (supernatural phenomenon) 只能被考官解读为你是在 背书		
A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	不能准确区分单词是否要 加ed或者s,甚至会出现he she 不分的情况	每隔几句都有少量 的时态或者单复数 错误	基础语法错误 已经基本消除,但 仍然存在一些使用
Grammar 语法	BALLER	PH 77.	过程中的细节语法错误(比如少数
	Sile 不分的情况		介词或连词使用不准确)
	考官可以听懂你的内容, 但某些地方他 / 她需要仔细	考官能比较容易 地听懂你的内容,	发音自然,但还是 偶尔出现发音错误,
Pronunciation 发音	分辨才能听懂,考官不会 享受和你的对话,只希望 考试时间快点过去	但仍然有些单词, 发音明显是错误的, 语调上不是很自然	考官已经开始享受和你的交谈过程
Vocabulary 词汇量	使用小学或初一单词过多, 这是一种可能。 但对中国考生而言还有另一 种更常见的可能,就是字典 英语痕迹明显,使用大量在 国外生活里从来不用的超级 大词, Pat称它叫"词汇恐怖	用词已经比较 准确,在适当的时候 可以用出来一些有 难度的词汇,但遗憾 的是,这些难词有 大约 1/3 是被错误 使用的	可以分辨在哪些 地方应该用小词, 在哪些地方可以用 更复杂的词汇,偶尔 存在用词不当,但 不影响整体意思的 表达
	主义" (verbal terrorism)		



下面我们用《剑 12》Test 5 里面的一道考题来说明低分与高分口语答案的区别:

What could you do to have a healthier lifestyle? 典型的5分答案: Many things, swim, ride my bike, not eat junk food. 典型的6分答案: I could exercise every day, watch less TV and drink more water to make my lifestyle healthier. 典型的7分答案: I could be more active and go to the gym regularly. I could also eat more vegetables, like carrois and tomatoes, so I could have a balanced diet. 我们还可以通过 (剑 12) Test 8 的这道考题来体会低档、中档与高档分数之间的 差异: Did you enjoy doing art lessons when you were a child?

典型的5分答案:

Yes, I like art lessons and I draw very well.

典型的6分答案:

No, they were boring. The art teacher just let us draw things by ourselves.

典型的7分答案:

Yes, I did because our art teacher taught us to draw, paint and make simple sculptures. Those activities were fun and interesting. They also made me more creative.

再来看《剑 11》Test 1 里的例题:



Do you watch cookery programmes on TV? [Why? Why not?]

典型的5分答案:

Yes, I watch cookery programmes on TV. They are interesting.

典型的6分答案:

Yes, I do. They teach me how to cook well. The food cooked on those shows looks beautiful and the hosts are very funny.

典型的7分答案:

Yes, I do because the hosts have great cooking skills. I can really learn from them and improve my own cooking. They also have a good sense of humour and many of them teach people how to cook healthy food.



再来看《剑 10》Test 2 里不同分数段的答案:

Do you think all children should learn to play a musical instrument? [Why? / Why not?]

典型的5分答案。

All children should learn to play a musical instrument because they can enjoy music when they play it.

典型的6分答案:

典型的7分答案

I think they should. Studying is very stressful. Playing a musical instrument helps children relax. It's an important skill all children should have.

Yes, they should because playing a musical instrument can reduce stress. It can also help children increase concentration. Playing a musical instrument, like the piano or a guitar, is also a good way for them to express themselves.

还有《剑9》Test 3 里的实例:

· MEIFIE Do you sometimes prefer to send a text message instead telephoning? [Why? / Why not?]

典型的5分答案。

Sometimes, when I don't know a person very well, I send him a message first to show respect.

典型的6分答案。

I send more messages than I call people. They don't make people annoyed, and I spend little money sending text messages.

典型的7分答案.

Yes. I prefer to text when the message isn't urgent, because that allows the receiver more time to think about how to reply. Texting is also much cheaper than calling.

💶 Day 1

我们还可以通过《剑8》Test 4 里面的考题来看看口语 7 分到底是怎样炼成的:

Do you enjoy the advertisements on television?

典型的5分答案:

No, I don't. I think they are very boring.

典型的6分答案:

I don't like them. Advertisements on television waste my time. They suddenly stop interesting TV shows and the things they try to sell are useless.

典型的7分答案

I enjoy some of them because they are fun and creative. They can also provide useful information about new products. But it's true sometimes advertisements really spoil the fun of watching TV. CHARA!

下面再用一个每场考试 Part 1 都有人被问到的常考问题实例来说明一下5→6→7 的 FISTELTS K 飞跃 (leap):

What's your favourite subject at school?

典型的5分答案:

It's English because English is very interesting.

典型的6分答案:

It's maths because maths makes us smart and maths is very useful for learning some other subjects.

典型的7分答案:

I would say ... it's PE, which stands for physical education. Sometimes we call it the gym class. PE not just helps us keep fit, it also helps us reduce stress and improve our memory.

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

我们的结论

Day 1

☆5分是挣扎着说出来的(或者另一个极端是无比流利地"喷"出来的),和考官的交流要不然就是基本无效,要不然就特别机械生硬,更像是"人机对话"

☆6分是思考着说出来的,和考官的交流开始有效,但是并不充分而且也不是 很流利

☆7分是快速思考之后比较连贯地说出来的,但中间仍然会有正常呼吸和短暂 思考所需要的自然停顿 (natural pauses)。和考官的交流比较充分,而且已经具有 一定的层次感,但是偶尔会出现不导致严重误解的语法、用词或者发音错误

3 □语考试要不要"套磁"? (Am I supposed to butter up the examiner?)

像这样"第二十二条军规"(Catch,22) 似的问题其实永远会吵个没完。我们这样来 看这个问题会更清楚: 套磁并不会明显加分,但如果套不好却可能会导致扣分,因为考官 被套一点也不影响他 / 她用自己的母语——英语向你提出问题,而集中精力套磁却会让你 没有精力用自己的非母语——英语去好好回答考官的问题。再说,如果考官真的对你的 套磁感兴趣了,撇开考试真跟你聊起来了,你能吃得消吗?(Are you really up to it?)

比如, 近期有个考生听考官是美国口音, 为了实现跟考官"零距离", 她就说自己的 "偶像"——罗玉凤——也住在美国。没想到考官正好看过 People 杂志对凤姐的深度 报道, 连续追问了一大堆相关问题, 直到考试结束时还问凤姐是不是已经在美国找到她的 dream guy 了。我们当然应该尊重考官, 但是像这种情况就纯属因为全力套磁而被"逆 袭"(lost the upper hand) 的闹剧了。

4 考官问的问题如果我压根儿就没听懂怎么办? (What can I possibly do if I don't fully understand a question?)

IELTS 口语里的 Part 1 和 Part 3 都是问答题。在这两个部分里,如果你遇到有的问题 没听清,怎么办呢?

British Council 官方明确规定: You can ask the examiner to repeat a question if you did not hear it clearly.

也就是说:你并不需要跟考官玩儿"我猜我猜我猜猜猜"的游戏,而是可以直接说,

"Sorry, could you please repeat that?" 这样说对 IELTS 口试这种正式 interview 是恰当 的、而且考官也愿意接受的。

而且,对于用词更加正式的 Part 3, British Council 官方还明确规定: You can ask for clarification in Part 3.

主办方这条规定的意思是:如果在 Part 3 你听不懂一个问题里的某个部分,有权请考 官替你澄清这个问题 (clarify the question),可以跟他 / 她说, "Sorry, could you please explain what you mean by... (你听不懂的部分)?"考官就会按照官方规定换一种 说法为你解释一下,你专注地听他 / 她的解释就好了。

当然,口语考官不是机器,也会有个人感受,也需要尊严。口试时偶尔请考官重复 或者澄清一两次是符合主办方规定的,但是不能频繁要求,否则不仅会浪费你和考官进行 实质交流的宝贵时间,而且也会让考官觉得你听提问时的注意力不够集中,缺乏对考官应 有的尊重。

5 IELTS 口语差时事么? (Am I supposed to constantly update my knowledge about current events for the speaking test?)

最近有不少考生发来邮件问 Pat 如果近期考试的话是否要准备一些关于朝鲜半岛局势 紧张 (rising tensions on the Korean Peninsula)、英国退欧公投 (the British Brexit referendum)、"小扎" 清华座谈 (Mark Zuckerberg's Q & A session at Tsinghua University)、名人网络骂战 (celebrity spats on social media)、甚至陈思诚出轨 (Chen Sicheng cheated on his wife)、王宝强起诉离婚 (Wang Baodiang filed for divorce) 等 新闻的相关信息。

考生的这种担心是正常的,毕竟 IELTS 口试属于面对面的交流,很容易让人联想到考 官是否会"实时"出题。但令人遗憾(也许是令人庆幸)的是:每一次 IELTS 口试的考 题均是由剑桥统一提供的, IELTS 口语并不考查最新的时事知识。

《剑 12》里的官方真题最真实地体现了雅思口试"<u>只考社会趋势,但不考具体时事</u>"的准确定位:

* What are the most popular types of films in your country?

How important is it to arrive early in your country?

What disadvantages are there in a society where the gap between rich and poor is very large?



* Why do some people prefer to work outdoors?

确实,这种"只管社会趋势,不管具体时事"的严格定位在一定程度上导致了 IELTS 口试话题的空洞与乏味,但想想考官一天下来要把有限的那几十个问题轮番问这么多不同 的人,其实比你更郁闷,你的心理也就平衡了。

所以, IELTS 口试的首要任务是考查你的英文口语表达能力,关注时事新闻 (follow current events in the news) 本身是一种很好的习惯,可以长期保持,但您就不必为了 准备口试而特意去突击时事新闻"涨姿势"了。

6 / 怎样正确看待□试的 Predictions?

对于备考时间很紧的考生们来说,不论英语水平高低,提前看看口语预测里的题目都 是高效率的备战方法。而且,由于雅思口试是分阶段更换题库而不是每次考试都更换题库, 因此口语预测的命中率还是挺高的。客观地说:准备口语预测不算是浪费生命。但有 3 点,Pat 要特别请您注意: 《 就于那些过于简单、你肯定能回答出来的预测题,可以 跳过去不必准备,有重点地备考是明智而不是偷懒; (b)话题接近的考题完全可以合并。 虽然你不是考官,但考官也不是你,考官就是一般人而不是 mind reader。当然,合并话题 时必须自然,过于牵强不叫合并,而叫无怨无悔地跑题; (c)Pat 坚决鼓励您把自己原创 的想法加到预测题的答案里去,即使有点幼稚也比彻底放弃抵抗就地卧倒要可贵。至于 如何扩展思路,学完 Day 8 便知。

Okay, let's get the show on the road.

2 Day



Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

When I look into your big blue eyes, I start to quiver and shake Talk to me, talk to me, All I want is just a nice little conversation * unvorteachertube.com * 对于从来没有近距离接触过外国人的那部分中国孩子来说, 第一次进考场和考官面对面很可能会有"坐电椅"的感觉,有些女 同学甚至走出考场时说的第一句话就是"吓死本宝宝了"。经常 点击上面这个网址的 interviews(在页面上方 search 栏填入 interview 即可),会让你更了解地道英语的交谈风格和"LW"们说话时独特 的面部表情,帮助你从战略上藐视敌人。

> We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.

VPart 1 的本质是什么?

关键词: chat

IELTS 口语第一部分用剑桥的官方定义来说,是"关于你的背景、爱好、兴趣和习惯 的基础问题"。但这听起来也太虚伪了吧?用普通人的话来讲, Part 1 (俗称"趴 1"或者 "趴忘")的本质就是一个 chat, 跟考官聊聊你自己的基本情况。所以, Part 1 的考题是 口试的三个部分里最"欢乐"的一个部分,因为它最贴近考生自己的生活。

从答案长度来看, Bruish Council 官方明确指出: Remember to keep your Part 1 answers short and direct (简短的、直接的). In general, your answers in Part 1 should be 2 or 3 sentences. 也就是说: Part 的答案并不需要"迂回曲折", 平均每道题回答 2 ~3 句话并做到流利、自然,就已经很好了。如果您有想"滔滔不绝"地回答考官提问的 FIFIELTST 热情,请把它留给 Part 3 的深入讨论。

下面都是《剑 12》给出的 Part 1 真题:

- Is eating healthy food important to you? [Why? / Why not?]
- If you catch a cold, what do you do to help you feel better? [Why?]
- Do you pay attention to public information about health? [Why? / Why not?]
- What could you do to have a healthier lifestyle? [Why?]
- Did you enjoy singing when you were younger? [Why? / Why not?]

How often do you sing now? [Why?]

Do you have a favourite song you like listening to? [Why? / Why not?]

Part 2 的本质是什么?

关键词: description

💶 Day 2

口语的 Part 2 (俗称"趴 2"或"趴吐"),剑桥的官方定义是"In Part 2, the examiner gives you active card. Then you have one minute to prepare and make notes. Then you'll be required to talk about the topic for one to two minutes."

Pat 注: 在全球很多考点,考官们其实都已经不再是发一个卡片了,而是发一张大 纸,纸上一个很小的角落里印着一个 topic 和几点提示

Part 2 的本质是要求你做一个 description (描述)。

#EISTEL TST "描述"和"闲聊"至少有下面两点不同:

☆ 描述时会有适当的思考和停顿 (pause)。

有些考生在 Part 2 因为正好遇到可以调动自己准备过的答案 (a prepared answer),就把答案无比流畅地背出来。这明显不符合正常人"描述"时的习惯。

☆ 描述要有一定的规划,需要有秩序才能描述清楚。

与 Part 1 和 Part 3 不同, Part 2 需要在同一个话题的不同方面之间做数次转换, 所 以对于答案的秩序感要求更高一些。不过既然是口语,毕竟还是和写作的严谨度要求 不同,所以也不用太呆板 (rigid)。口语最好的效果永远是轻松自然的。

Keep it natural.

比如下面这道题是《剑 12》 Test 5 的 Part 2:

Describe an occasion when you had to wait a long time for someone or something to arrive.

You should say:

who or what you were waiting for

how long you had to wait

why you had to wait a long time

and explain how you felt about waiting a long time.

下面这道题则是《剑 12》Test 7 的 Part 2:

Describe an interesting discussion you had about how
you spend your money.
You should say
who you had the discussion with
why you discussed this topic
what the result of the discussion was
and explain why this discussion was interesting for you.

如果您对这些 topics 感觉"无从下嘴",没关系,我们会在 Day 8 对完整的卡片真题 库进行深入的探寻。

→ Part 3 的本质是什么?

关键词: discussion

"趴3/趴睡"的本质是一个 discussion (讨论)。多数时候 Part 3 的问题都与 Part 2 的卡片话题相关,而且问题涉及的人群比 Part 1 更广泛。Part 1 里的多数题是关于



"you / your life"的,而 Part 3 里的多数题则是关于 "people", "society" 或者 "your country",甚至 "the world / global issues" 的。

既然 Part 3 是 discussion, 那么在语言上就必然有下面三个特点:

☆ 需要很强的层次感。本书为您总结出了深入讨论 Part 3 所需的全部常用逻辑 结构,详见 Day 9。

☆ 语言风格会比 Part 1 和 Part 2 更正式。无论用词还是内容都会更 formal。

☆ 好消息是:毕竟 Part 3 还是考口语,而不是考写作。所以, Part 3 的答案也不必 像《人民的名义》里面的达康书记说话那么严肃,而且 Part 3 考题的难度与雅思作文 题的难度相比还是有一定差距的,详情请看 Day 9。

例如,《剑12》Test 7 的 Part 2 卡片话题是 a discussion about spending money。相应的, Part 3 就出现了下列问题:

- Why do some parents give their children money to spend each week?
- Do you agree that schools should teach children how to manage money?
- Do you think it is a good idea for students to earn money while studying?
- Do you think richer countries have a responsibility to help poor countries?

像这样的问题显然已经和 IELTS 写作里常考的"teach high school students financial skills"和 "international aid"话题有相似之处了,但难度比写作考题相比还 是要低一些。

Ŋ Part 1 考什么?

每个月在亚太考区最新出现的新题, Pat 都会及时在自己的博客 blog. sina. com. cn/ ieltsguru 的口语预测当中为您及时公布。

Recent Part 1 Questions (Part 1 的完整话题库请看 Day 7)

The Start of the Test

Please switch off / turn off (关闭) your mobile phone.

What's your full name? / Can you tell me your full name please?

Can I see your ID card please?

EF * What's your full name? / Can you tell me your full name please?

这是固定的问题,简单地回答 My (full) name is...就好了。因为中文的姓名顺序和 英文的姓名顺序正好相反,所以最好别太具体地说你的 first name / last name 是什么,除 非你计划在一开始就弄晕发官(Pat 的很多在中国有过任教经历的英美朋友们都谈到他们 在中国时"had to be careful about saying 'first name' and 'last name' to avoid confusion")。如果您非要坚持说清楚自己"姓字名谁",那就脚踏实地地说 My family name is... and my given name is... 也可以影 ▲ Can I see your ID card please?
这个也是固定问题,回答 Here you are. 或者 Here you go. 都很好。

\square \Rightarrow Can I see your ID card please?

Hometown / Your House / Your flat / Housework

EF & What would you change about your city?

这里的 would 表示只是你的希望,并不是必须要能实现的。

IF 🕸 What types of public transport can be found in your hometown?

很多中国同学爱说的 transportation 其实是美国的说法,英国考官会用 transport。

公车当然是 bus, 轻轨叫 ligh railway 或者 light rail, 轮渡叫作 ferry, 地铁在英国叫 underground,在美国叫 subway (Pat 注意到有些同学把自己所在城市的地铁叫作 the Tube, 其实在英国 the Tube 只能用来特指伦敦市内的地铁)。
$_{\odot}$ Day 2

🖅 🕸 Do you take public transport? Why?

如果您想回答"是",理由可以有 Public transport in my city is convenient and reliable. (方便可靠的), It's a cheaper way to get around. (是更省钱的出行方式), It's more eco-friendly than driving. (比开车更环保),或者就用现在英美年轻人当中很"潮" 的一种说法: I want to reduce my carbon footprint. (减少我的"碳足迹")。

J. Pat's note: British Council 官方明确指出:IELTS 口试的评分原则之一是"A negative answer is just as good as a positive one."(只要英文正确,肯定的答案或者否 定的答案都是考官愿意接受的)。如果您想回答"不是",理由则可以有: Public transport in my city is never on time (从来都不准时). It's unreliable. (不可靠的) 或者 It's always overcrowded (过于拥挤的).

Your Studies / Your Work

IF & What did you do on your tet day in this school / university?

国外学校入学的第一天经常被称为 Orlentation Day,常见活动有 an orientation tour of the campus (其实也就是带着大家看看校园), a Welcome Meeting, a free lunch (但最 近几年因为经济不行,很多学校已经赖掉了),在有些学校里还可以 meet the faculty and FIEL TS THE staff (和教职工见面)。

Habits & Hobbies

IF A What do you usually do at weekends?

注意:英国考官说"在周末"时会说 at weekends,而不说 on weekends。

I ☆ Do you do housework?

最常见家务事儿的英文表达是: wash the dishes / do the dishes (洗碗), do the laundry (洗衣服, 在英美极少有人 wash clothes by hand), take out the rubbish (倒垃 圾,这是英式英语,而在美国则说 take out the trash), vacuum the floor (用吸尘器吸地 板,在中国吸尘器已经快成古董了,但在英美的大多数家庭却还在"坚守"吸尘器), mop the floor (擦地板), clear the table after dinner (晚饭后收拾餐桌), water the plants (浇花),而且在地道英文里 spring cleaning (春季大扫除) 也是很常用的短语。

🕼 🌣 Are you good at managing your time?

Pat's answer: Yes, I can manage my time well. I like to make daily schedules (做每天的日程安排) and plan my activities ahead. I also try to complete my tasks on time.

Pat's note:

(i) 如果想给否定的回答则可以说: No, I'm not good at managing my time. I like to put things off (推迟) until the last minute, so I often find it difficult to get things done on time.

(ii) ind it difficult to do sth. 是英文口语里很常用的句型之一, 意思是"感到做某事很困难"。例如, 美剧《纸牌屋》(House of Cards) 里的男主角 Kevin Spacey 就说过,
 "Sometimes I find it difficult to decide between two choices."

(iii) 这3 个地道短语在谈 time management 的时候也很常用: set my priorities (明确自己应该优先完成的任务) use time efficiently (高效率地使用时间), avoid distractions (避免干扰),一个爱拖延的人,"拖延症患者"的英文叫 a procrastinator

□ ☆ Do you think it's important to be politer

英国人常说 Politeness is a virtue (讲礼貌是一种美德) 您可以在本书附赠的 《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》的 p. 233 看到礼貌的重要性和中外各种 show politeness 的方式。

Sports / Outdoor Activities

🕼 🌣 Do you like swimming?

Pat's answer: Yes, I do. Swimming is a good way to relax and reduce stress. It's also a good form of exercise and helps me keep fit.

Pat's note:

(i) 地道短语 reduce stress 的意思是"减轻压力";

 \mathbf{A}_{0} Day 2

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

(ii) 地道英文里还常说 Swimming is a good way to lose weight (游泳是减肥良方). 如果您希望练出像孙杨、傅园慧一样健美的体型,还可以说 Swimming is a great way to build up muscles.

I ☆ Where do you swim?

Pat's answer: I often swim in our community swimming pool because it's close to my home and is well managed.

Pat's note:

(i) 地道表达 is well managed 的意思是"管理得很完善的";

(ii) 如果想说在湖里或者在海里游泳可以"更加接近大自然",地道英文会用 get closer to nature 这个短语

IF & What are your favourite games?

native English speakers 熟悉的游戏

• 户外游戏 (outdoor games):

hide-and-seek (捉迷藏), tag (基本就等于国内小伙伴们 玩的"捉人"游戏), piggy-in-the-middle (站在两边的两个人互 相向对方扔球,站在他们中间的一个人努力去拦他们扔出的球, 如果谁扔的球被拦住了就要换到中间去作 piggy"小胖猪"), hopscotch (中文翻译成"跳房子",其实是跳在地上编有数字的 方格)。

• 室内游戏 (indoor games):

board games 在地道英语里是泛指各种"棋类游戏",比如 chess (象棋),Monopoly (大富翁)和 Scrabble (英美最常见 的一种拼字游戏,它对提高小朋友甚至成年人的拼写能力 spelling skills 很有好处),以及 card games (牌类游戏), puzzles (拼图游戏),math games (近几年在英美特别流行的 一种数学游戏叫作 Sudoku),video games 等。

22



▲ hopscotch 游戏用的典型方格 — Pat 摄



▲ 在英美的玩具店里, Scrabble 和 Monopoly 经常是邻居 ——Pat 摄

Pat 在中国时看到的流行游戏

Chinese chess (中国象棋), puzzles (拼图游戏), riddle games (猜谜语), jumping rubber band (跳橡皮筋), playing with marbles (玩弹子球), 当然还有各种 video games, 比如 Dota 2, 王者荣耀 (King of Glory), League of Legends (英雄联 盟), Hearthstone: Heroes of Warcraft (炉石传说) 等等。

EF & Do you think it's important for children to play outdoor games?

Pat's answer: Yes, it's important because outdoor games can help children develop an active lifestyle. Playing outdoors can also reduce their stress and improve their eyesight. Children who often play outdoor games also tend to sleep better at night.

Pat's note:

谈到户外活动的时候这两个地道短语也很常用: enjoy the sun and fresh air (享受阳 光和新鲜空气)和 boost the immune system (提高身体免疫机能)

· MEISTEL TS

The Media

I ☆ Why do we need advertisements?

最重要的原因当然是 They give us information about new products: 而且很多广告具 有创意 (creative),娱乐性也很强 (entertaining),还可以在广告里面看到 celebrities (名人);而对于商家 (businesses) 来说,advertisements 则是 important marketing tools。

I ⇒ Do you like watching history programmes on TV?

Pat 个人很喜欢看 Discovery Channel 上面的历史节目。爱看历史节目的理由可以有 They help me gain a better understanding of history (更深入地了解历史). They're informative and educational. (信息量大而且很有知识性的). They're also very entertaining. (娱乐性也很强) 等。如果不喜欢看则可以说 They're not based on historical facts (并不是基于史实). They're misleading (有误导性的). 或者 Their only purpose is to attract more viewers (仅仅是为了吸引更多的观众)等等。

The Internet

Day 2

IF A What are the differences between emails and letters?

在英美 letters 也经常被叫作 snail mail (蜗牛信),因为实在太耗时间 (timeconsuming) 了,详情请看 Day 7 的 Topic 7。

Reading & Writing

IF to you think handwriting is still an important skill for young people?

Pat's answer: Yes, I think it's still important. We still often take notes, answer test questions or write birthday cards by hand. Good handwriting is easy to read, while poor handwriting is confusing and appoying.

Pat's note:

confusing and annoying 是"令人困惑而且让人心烦的","书写仍然是一种重要的沟通技能"是 Handwriting is still an important communication skill.

Do you prefer to type things or to write things on paper?

打字的好处除了更快(faster),还可以编辑(edit)和剪贴(cut and paste things)。

Clothing & Jewellery

I ⇒ Do you buy clothes online?

Pat's answer: No, I don't because I can't try on clothes online. It's hard to know if they would really fit me or not. It's much easier to go to a local clothing shop, try the clothes on and make sure they fit me well.

Pat's thought: 如果确实喜欢在网上买衣服,用地道英文可说的也同样很多,比如: Buying clothes online helps me save time. 而且 Prices are lower online than in physical shops (实体店). 以及 Online clothing shops have a wide variety of (多种多样的) clothes to choose from. 等



🕼 🕸 Do you like wearing jewellery? Why?

详情请看 Day 7 的 Topic 9。

Food

🕼 🌣 Do you like fruit and vegetables?

Pat's answer: Yes, I do. They taste good and they're very rich in vitamin C and fiber, so eating fruit and vegetables every day can improve my health.

Pat's note:

(i) 短语 be tich in ... 是"富含……"的意思, vitamin C and fiber 是指"维生素 C 和纤维",想说"有营养的",请用 nutritious / nju:'triʃəs/,而如果要形容水果"多汁的", 请坚定地使用 very juicy 来表达

(ii) "均衡的饮食结构" 叫作 balanced diet

(iii) 英美人还普遍相信胡萝卜 (carrots) 和橙子 (oranges) 可以增强视力, 英国 家长们经常会在餐桌上提醒孩子,"Eat more carrots. They can improve your eyesight." FIELTS

Neighbours

E to you prefer to have elderly people or young people by your neighbours?

年轻邻居们的好处是 more sociable (更喜欢社交的), more open-minded (思想更 开放的),而且 I find it easier to communicate with young neighbours 等;而老人做邻居 的优点则可以有: They tend to be quiet but helpful.

Pat's note: tend to be 是地道英文里表示"多半是"的常用短语:

[BBC 例句] Elderly people tend to be wiser and happier.

Music

T a Do you think it's important for children to learn to play a musical instrument?

25

小朋友学乐器的各种好处请看 Day 7 的 Topic 11。



□ ☆ Do you prefer to go to pop stars' concerts or listen to their albums?

更喜欢去演唱会的理由可以有 I want to experience their music first-hand. (直接体验 他们 / 她们的音乐) Pop concerts are exciting events. 或者 Attending a pop concert is a memorable experience. (很值得回忆的经历) I want to get closer to my idols (更加接近 自己的偶像). 还有 I can meet and make friends with others who also like their music. 等。

如果更喜欢听专辑,则可以说 I can enjoy a wider selection (更广泛的选择) of their songs. 以及 Pop concerts tend to be very noisy. 或者 These days concert tickets are too expensive. 等。

Weather

🖙 🛊 Do you prefer surray days or rainy days?

Pat's answer: I prefer sunny days because sunshine makes me feel happy and energetic. I also like to do outdoor sports on sunny days, such as jogging and · MEISTELT cycling.

Pat's note:

(i) 短语 feel happy and energetic 是"感觉心情愉快、很有活力"的意思

(ii) 如果想说喜欢雨天当然也可以,比如 I like rainy days because I like the sound of raindrops (雨点儿) falling on the ground. I also feel more calm and relaxed (感觉更 加平静、放松的)on rainy days.

□ ☆ Do you know any technology that uses sunshine?

例如太阳能计算器(solar-powered calculators),太阳能驱动的汽车(solarpowered cars),太阳能热水器 (solar water heaters)等。

Buildings

□ ☆ Do you think museums are important to young people?

Pat's answer: Yes, they're important because they're very educational (很有知识性的). They can teach young people about history, art and science. They also provide fun activities (有趣的活动,注意不是"搞笑的活动"), videos and stories as part of their exhibitions (展览).

Pat's thought: Pat 在国外看到一些中国孩子出国之后天天还在宿舍里"宅"着, 每天接触到的英语还没有在国内准备雅思的时候多。Pat 认识的一个北京孩子在美国生活 了两年,英语丝毫没见长进,反而熟练掌握了两种国内的方言,"留洋"变成了"留唐"。 其实即使是性格内向的同学到了国外也应该多去 local sports centers, museums 和 local cultural events,多感受当地人的真实生活方式。否则,当你离开的时候可就真的成了 "挥一挥衣袖,不带走一片云彩"。



IF the Why do many people keep pets?

Pat's answer: That's because pets can help their owners reduce stress and the eliness (减少压力和孤独的感觉). It seems people who have pets are happier and more active. Keeping pets is also a good way for children to learn about responsibility because they need to take care of their pets.



Pat's thought: 人们"遛狗"英文叫 walk their dogs (注意:不是"走狗"),把东 西扔出去让小狗捡回来的游戏叫 play fetch with their dogs。

Birthday

EF & What kinds of birthday gifts did you receive on your last birthday?

详情请看 Day 7 的 Topic 20。

此外,您还可以在 Day 7,以及随本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》 里看到更多的 Part 1 思路、词汇和短语。 oDay 2

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

NPart 2 的答案完全可以合理、合法地合并

仅仅从2017年4月25日至2017年6月22日短短两个月的时间内,在中国大陆累计 出现的卡片题就超过了70个。现实地说,除非是有长期的备考时间,否则把 IELTS 口试 卡片题库里面的每道题都准备得很熟练是不可能的 (That would be out of the question.),所以才会有那么多孩子在准备 Part 2 的时候大呼"累觉不爱"。

恰当地"合并"卡片题答案的备考方法不仅是可行的,而且是必行的。请看:

Describe a teacher who has	Describe a neighbor who	Describe a person who can
influenced you.	helped you before.	speak a foreign language well.
Describe someone who helped you before.	Describe an important person in your life.	Describe an old person who you admire.
Describe someone who you have studied or worked with.	Describe a family member.	Describe someone who gave you good advice.

很明显,通过准备 an old English teacher,我们不仅可以准备好左上角的一个题目,还可以很自然地覆盖这个表格里其他所有的 topics,甚至还可以把一部分内容借用到 Describe a subject you liked at school. / Describe the first day of a course you attended at school. / Describe an ideal job. 等看似"不搭界"的考题里。

18

又比如下面这个表格:

Describe a special meal you had recently.	Describe a diffi- cult thing you can do well.	Describe a skill.	Describe an interesting thing you did in your spare time recently.
Describe a happy event in your childhood.	Describe a birth- day party.	Describe a good cook.	Describe an exciting experience.

通过准备一个关于 cooking 的详细过程,会让我们对描述这些题目都有足够的信心。

下面请您自己感受一下合并 topics 的乐趣,练习下面的话题怎样快速搞定:

Part 3 7

的详解。

Describe an electronic device (not a computer).	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Describe an expen- sive thing you want to buy.	Describe something you lost.
Describe your favou- rite method of commu- nication.			?

一个 mobile phone 的答案就可以让这么多"闹心"的话题都迎刃而解了。

此外,您还可以在本书 Day 8 看到雅思 Part 2 真题库的详解。

What do you think is a healthy lifestyle?

(思路提示: have a balanced diet / eat plenty of truit and vegetables / drink 8 glasses of water a day "一天喝 8 杯水" 是英国国家医疗体系 NHS 提出的健康生活标 准之一 / exercise regularly / early to bed and early to rise 这可不是"中式英语",而是地道的英文: 早睡早起)

以下题目都是近期在亚太考区出现的 Part 3 真题,您还可以在 Day 9 看到对于 Part 3

• What are the differences between modern buildings and traditional buildings?

(思路提示: traditional buildings are more eco-friendly 更有益于环保的 / traditional buildings look more attractive 更有吸引力的 / modern buildings are taller and stronger / modern buildings lack character 缺乏个性特色)

What are the differences between fresh food and canned food?

(思路提示: fresh food is rich in fiber (纤维) and vitamins / fresh food tastes better / canned food takes less time to prepare and cook)

Day 2

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

How do TV programmes affect education?

(思路提示: some TV programmes are interesting and informative / they can provide young people with a wide variety of (多种多样的) useful information / on the other hand, many TV programmes contain violent or sexual images / young people tend to copy what they see on TV)

• What do you think of giving children gifts when they behave well?

(思路提示: That's like a reward for their good behaviour. / On the other hand, children may be spoiled if adults always do that / it would be better to reward children with words than with gifts)

What's your idea of success?

(思路提示: It can be anything I really try hard to do. / anything that can give me a sense of achievement / even as ordinary as cooking a nice meal for my family or friends / some people are very amotives and always try to achieve success in their ATT SI : MEIFIE studies or careers)

Who can give good advice to us?

(思路提示: our parents / our teachers / our friends / people who have had similar experiences / people who really care about us)

How can we solve the problem of global warming?

(思路提示: control the number of cars / improve public transport / encourage adults to cycle to work / encourage children to walk to school)

What are the differences between individual sports and team sports?

(思路提示: We are more focused when we do individual sports such as jogging and swimming. / Individual sports can give us a strong sense of achievement. / Team sports can improve our teamwork skills. / Team sports are more fun because we communicate and work closely with our teammates. / We share the joy of winning with our teammates.)

Part 3 的题目不管听起来多么怪异 (weird),也没必要把答案想得太"深邃" (profound)。请牢记:雅思口语里的高分答案毕竟也还是口语 (spoken English), 而不是写作 (written English)。

用 British Council 的官方建议来说就是, "Remember this is a test of English conversation."



ESHSTRATING STRATESTICS

1

1

Ē

9 - 10 - 11





IELTS Speaking Building Blocks

Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

You think that I don't even mean a single word I said. They're only words. And words are all I can possibly have. * 此中的www.topics-mag.com * 这个网站上的网友来自世界各地,您不妨经常上去看一看。 它的英语风格就很接近 IELTS 口语高分答案的风格:用词不是很 难,但也不是很"痞";有一定的连贯性,但绝不是背书。

> We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.

为_{了准备 IELTS 口试,很多同学已经用出了"洪荒之力" (英国 BBC 把它译为 prehistoric powers)。}

本应该用来和考官进行交流的口语答案被"武装到了牙齿",充斥着"语不惊人死不休"的难词和"让人回肠荡气"的长难句。备考热情本身值得鼓励,可问题在于。同学们的这些答案和 Pat 自己每天在国外生活里听到的真实对话怎么听都是两种语言。

主办方 British Council 的考官们也注意到了这个误区,而且特意向考生提出了"整改通知":

Many candidates have been told to use profound (高深的) vocabulary — this is misleading (有误导性的) advice. Most candidates who follow this advice usually use these words in an inappropriate (不恰当的) way. Candidates should remember this is a test of conversation.

那么真实的 IELTS 口语高分答案是什么样呢?

请您仔细体会由 British Council 提供的这个真实官方高分答案样例:

Which do you prefer, getting an email or a text message?

I prefer emails. I work in front of a computer all day so this is easier for me. I'm not good at texting. I know I'm a bit old-fashioned.

这样的答案之所以会是 British Council 官方的高分答案,是因为这名考生显然是想 针对考官提出的问题和考官进行真正有效的交流,而不是"自娱自乐"。这是典型的 British Council 官方答案的风格,而且也将是您出国之后每天听到身边 native speakers 谈话的真实风格。

我们再来看下面这个 British Council 提供的高分实例:

Have you ever cooked a meal for your family?

I haven't actually. My mum tends to do all the cooking in our house. But I did bake some biscuits once. They were terrible. No one would eat them. $\Box_0 Day 3$

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

整体用词很浅显,只用了少量略有难度(但也并不是很难)的单词和短语(phrases) 作为"点缀",考生的意图同样是努力回答考官提出的问题,形成有效的交流。

我们再来看这个《剑 12》Test 6 里面的高分实例:

What is the difference between watching a film in the cinema and watching a film at home?

A cinema screen is much larger than a TV screen and the sound quality in the cinema is better. But it's more convenient and cheaper to watch a film at home. Watching a film at home is also more comfortable for people who don't like sitting in a crowded place.

还有这个《剑 11》Test 里面的高分实例:

Do you agree there is a right age for young adults to stop living with their parents?

Yes, I agree because young adults who still live with their parents tend to rely too much on their parents. Most of them don't cook for themselves or clean their rooms. That's unfair to their parents. I think after young adults find their first job, usually at around 22 years of age, they should stop living with their parents.

没有刻意使用"霸气"的词汇,但考生明显是在认真地回答考官提出的问题,而不是 想把连自己都没有把握的答案扔给考官之后就"闪"。

下面这个高分答案的用词同样平实,牢记口语的目的是"交流",而不是"吓人"。

Do you think bicycles are good for all ages?

I don't think so. Cycling is a good way to keep fit for most ages. But for people who are too young or too old to have good balance skills, cycling can be dangerous activity.

再来看下面的答案:

What kinds of radio programmes do you like best?

I don't really listen to the radio very often. But I tend to prefer news shows and sports shows because they are fun and helpful. They give me information about what is happening around the world and in sports competitions.

这样的答案之所以成为 IELTS 口试中的高分答案,就因为它合理 (make sense),而 且它的目标是和考官进行实实在在的交流 (effective communication)。

即使比较抽象的考题也并不是必须用所谓"高端、大气、上档次"的词汇才能拿到高分。

Do you think is possible to be friends with people who you've never met in person?

Yes, it's possible. I've heard about pen friends or "pen pals" who'd never met in person but could still communicate well with each other by mail. And these days, it's very easy to make new friends on social networking websites.

关于准备口试词汇, British Council 给出的官方建议是:

Learn vocabulary by topic instead of in random lists.

您可以在本书 Day 7, Day 8 和本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》里 找到针对各类常考话题(commonly-tested topics)的加分词汇和短语。同时必须提醒您的 是:"好词"在 IELTS 口试里的意义是帮助你更加有效地回答考官提出的问题、与你的考官 进行更加充分的交流,而不是用来"晒"(show off)的奢侈品(luxury products)。 ESHSTRATING STRATESTIC

3 2

ł

, J

> i N

, L.,

۰ ا

i.





Common Linking Words

Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

I try to take a breath but I'm already choking because everywhere I look, I can see how you hold back. 不知您是否熟悉 podcast 这种在国外已经相当流行的学习手段, 比如在 google 上搜索一下 English as a second language (ESL) podcast, 就会有上千个学习资源供你选择, 而且都是标准的发音和地道的英文, 真的该试一下了。

夏田子村来注

We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.

Pat 在北京的一个外教朋友经常向 Pat 这样"吐槽" (complained), "My students really like to overuse the word 'moreover'. But we hardly ever use it in conversation (谈话的时候几乎从来不用)!"

事实上, moreover 虽然确实可以在正式的英语学术写作里使用, 但是在国外的日常 生活当中却几乎没有任何一个 native speaker 会在说话的时候用 moreover, 因为很多人觉 得说话时用这个词会听起来 pompous (浮夸)。

连接词 (linking words) 对于提高口语答案的连贯性 (coherence) 很有好处,但如果把 native speakers 在口语里其实并不常用的连接词用到"也是醉了",反而会让本来 挺好的答案听起来不自然 (unnatural)。

用法说明与例句 类别 连接词 ☆ and 是英美日常生活里 native speakers 表示并列或 者补充信息时最常用,而且也听起来最自然的连接 词、没有之一 《剑12》例句: I enjoy working with children and I probably need some more experience before I go on a really challenging trip. and ☆ also, too 和 as well 也都很实用, also 在口语里一般 ... also ...* 补充 出现在句子中间。而 too 和 as well 在句子结尾出现 ... too. 🖈 信息 比较多 ... as well. 🖈 Besides, ... 《剑12》例句: We may also do some interviewing away from the site. ☆ Besides.... 在口语里经常出现在句子开头,用来给 出补充信息 例: I don't really want to go. Besides, it's too late now.

Native Speakers 在口语交流当中真正使用的连接词



_____ Day 4 _____

– IELTS SPEAKING TEST 💻

类别	连接词	用法说明与例句
		☆ 一句话里用了 because, 就不要再用 so, 它们在 同一个句子里"不兼容"
因果	because ★ so ★ therefore	 《剑 12》例句: Many small local shops have closed because customers go to large shopping centers to do their shopping. ☆ therefore, 可以在 Part 3 的深入讨论里适当使用 1~2次,如果过多则会让考官产生压迫感
举例	like * such as * For example, * and stuff like that. and things like that.	 除了 For example, / such as 这两个实用的举 例方式之外, "like + 名词"也是英美生活里的 "举例神器": 《剑 12》例句: More and more tourists are visiting places where conditions are difficult, such as the Sahara desert or the Antarctic. 例: I'm into fantasy novels like Harry Potter and The Hunger Games. (这里改用 such as 也 没问题) 例: There can be a variety of ways to help others. For example, we can do voluntary work in our community. We can also give money to charities. Even just giving others advice when they need it would be a good way to help others.
转折	But★ However,	☆表示转折,这两个说法都可以,在口语里 But 要 比 However 更常用

类别	连接词	用法说明与例句
21		☆ if 就是口语里表示如果最自然的词 《剑12》例句: If we can control the number of cars on the road, we can reduce traffic jams and delays.
条件	If ,★ as long as	☆ as long as 是"只要"的意思, 比如 Backstreet Boys 的歌词"I don't care who you are, where you're from or what you did, as long as you love me."
	ALER.	《剑 12》例句: As long as we have enough notice, we can deal with that.
对比	On the other hand,* while * By contrast	 ☆ On the other hand, (另一方面,) 例: My job is quite stressful. On the other hand, it pays well. ☆ while を口试中, 特別是在 Part 3 里面使用 1 ~ 2 次完全可以, 而且效果也挺自然的, 只要別不停地 while while就没关系 例: I do most of the housework while Amanda only does the dishes. ☆ By contrast 它也很适合在 Part 3 的深入讨论 部分里引出两种人或两种事物之间的对比: 例: Men think of shopping as a task. By contrast, women think of shopping as a hobby.
让步	Although,	☆ Although, 是 "尽管"的意思 《剑 12》例句: Although Denmark seems the obvious place to go, I'd love to spend the time in Iceland.



🔩 Day 4 _

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

类别	连接词	用法说明与例句	
替代	rather than * instead of	 ☆ rather than 和 instead of 都表示"而不是",中国考生们普遍很熟悉这两个地道短语,却很少能想到在口语里面去使用它们: 例: Many history programmes focus on opinion rather than fact. 例: Developed countries should help developing countries improve their education system instead of just giving them money. 	

也许您不愿意相信,上面这个表格里的连接词,不仅仅是对于 IELTS 口语的答案足够 了,而且对于您今后几年里的国外校园生活也足够了。英语日常口语里的动词、名词、 形容词极为丰富,堪称"海量",但是native speakers 在且语对话里常用的连词却真的是 相当有限的。



对于备考时间已经彻底不够,甚至连书都已经看不下去了的 "烤鸭"来说,其实不妨试试通过练习剑桥听力题来提高对于口语 连贯性的感觉:多听剑4 ~ 剑12 每套题里面的听力段子,并且把 剑4 ~ 剑12 后面的听力文本 (audioscripts) 也看上几遍,耳濡 目染也能提高对英语连贯性的感觉。

比如,这个《剑9》的听力段子里就用到了不少我们已经学到的地道英文连接词:

Recycled materials have been used whenever possible. For example, the floors are made of reclaimed floor. And the owners haven't bought any new furniture. So the occupants of the house won't pollute the land or use any damaging chemicals. It is true that the construction of the house was harmful to the environment, mainly because they had to use large amounts of concrete. And, as you know, this is very damaging to the environment.

这个《剑10》的"段子"同样展示了地道英文是怎样体现连贯性的:

The goals we are focusing on affect the way we think. For example, when focusing on promotion goals, people consider their ideal self and their gains. They don't think about what they can lose, so they think in a happier mode. By contrast, when people are focusing on prevention goals, they think about what they should be doing and what people are expecting from them. As a result, they experience more anxiety and try to avoid situations where they could lose.

剑4~剑12里的同类段子还有很多,您练习听力的时候就能清楚地感受到,Pat 就 不提供更多"剧透"(spoiler)了。这样的英文,其实远比一些艰深晦涩的口语答案更加 接近当代英美 native speakers 的真实口语交流风格。 ESERTIMIES STRUCTURE

1

ý

ł.

Day 5



Try to Avoid Basic Grammatical Mistakes

Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

We write a thousand pages They're torn and on the floor And we are never leaving because this place is part of us And all these scenes repeating are just so cold to the touch * idebate arg / debatabase * 这个相当酷的辩论网站几乎覆盖了所有的常考口语讨论 话题。在页面中部选择 Education, Culture, Environment & Animal Welfare 等主题后,您就可以在 This house believes that 的后面看到 各种各样的辩论话题。点击辩论话题之后,您就可以立刻找到 自己需要的各种支持和反对理由(points for & points against)。

> We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.

对于7分口语考生的语法准确度,官方要求是: frequently produces error-free sentences, though some grammatical mistakes persist(能够说出较多不含语法错误的 句子,但一些语法错误仍持续存在)。也就是说,7 分答案里还是允许出现语法错误的,只要 不是过于频繁就好了。

但是, British Council 同时指出:

If you make too many basic grammatical mistakes(过多的基础语法错误), your speaking score will be limited.

主办方之所以这么介意"基础语法错误",就是因为它们在考生们的答案里实在太顽固 了,简直就是"打不死的小强"。

√必须努力其正的4类基础语法错误

无视-ed 的存在

悍然忘记动词过去时的杀伤力非常强、特别是对于 Part 2 卡片题的描述,如果题目要求 描述你过去的事件或者经历,你一旦忘记就必然会连续说错一串儿动词的时态。

请在考前练习预测题的时候就经常提醒自己:"用实际描述过去的事情就必须用动词的 过去时。"在考场实战中,如果看到 Part 2 的卡片话题是要求描述过去的事件或者经历,你还 可以在1分钟的思考时间开始时就把-ed 写在考官给你记 notes 的白纸上提示自己,字母写 得大一点也没关系。你不需要给 British Council 省纸,反正 1960 大洋已经垫进去了。

多数英语动词的过去时形式都是直接加 ed,但还有少数不规则动词的过去时形式是特 殊变化,请在考前花一点时间熟悉下面这个表格:

容易说错的 28 个不规则动词过去式

动词原形	正确的过去式	
-11		
begin	began	
break	broke	
	bought	
buy		

Day 5.

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



Pat指南 Ch

英语的时态原则是"动词的形式和动作发生的时间严格对应"。如果考官在 Part 1 和 Part 3 问你的问题或者考官在 Part 2 给你的卡片题是关于现在的常态,或者是关于你对 未来的展望,那么直接用一般现在时或者用 will + 动词原形就好了。

he / she 之不知

有些孩子描述 an old man 的话题,一上来就是 she,但说了几个 she 突然又变成了 he... 考官只能相信这位可敬的 old man 是一个 transsexual person。这已经都不是卖萌了,这是 真萌。

中文里的他和她写法不同,可读音相同。但英文里的 he 和 she 不仅拼写不同,发音也 有明显的差异。如果说错 he / she 不仅会引起误解,甚至有可能会导致很"囧"的局面(an embarassing situation)。请在考前练习预测题时就提醒自己一定要分清你的答案里"男 主"/"女主"的性别。

┃ 滥用····· how to say...

当一个中国孩子想不出该用什么词汇的时候经常会这么说,可惜这真心不是一个地道 的英文插入语。下一次如果犹豫该说什么,需要一点缓冲时间,请改用 like... 或者 you know... 这样 native speakers 确实会使用的插入语,而且也不要用得过于频繁,否则会影响 ELTST 你在流利度评分项上面的得分。

| 不能"蹭"过去的-s 问题 |

在中国同学们的口试答案里,单复数永远是最常见的错误,很多中国孩子甚至根本就不 觉得一个字母 s 加不加还算个事儿。但是在英文口语里,名词加 s 和不加 s 时的读音会有 明显的不同,你很难"蹭"过去。更重要的是.英语偏偏就是一种对于单复数"斤斤计较"的 语言,单复数的不同往往会带来句子意思的实质性差异,是一个"原则问题"。

同时还要注意的是:不仅忘了给复数名词加 s 是错的,如果给不可数名词"画蛇添足"地 加了s也同样是错的。

在 IELTS 口试里 <mark>不能</mark> 加 s 的 8 个常考名词			常考名词	
	information	knowledge	advice	behaviour
	furniture	equipment	scenery	jewellery

💶 Day 5

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

这4 类基础语法错误一直是中国考生口试表现当中挥之不去的顽疾。Pat 强烈建议您 在考前练习预测题的时候给自己的答案录音,并专门找时间回放录音,查找自己是不是也犯 了这4 类语法错误。只要坚持录音、查错并且正视自己的错误,这4 类基础语法错误其实是 不难改的——您需要的只是一个决心和正视自己的语法错误的勇气。

│ 雅思口语考试里到底有没有很特殊的句子?

Yes and No.

为什么这么说呢?因为口语的本质就是用来进行交流的工具,如果"处心积虑"地搞特殊 那说出来的就一定不是正常人说的语言了。但是另一方面,下面两种句子确实有点特殊, 如果恰当使用,在IELTS口试里还是会有很明显的拿分作用的。

1 定语从句

用 that, who, which 引导的定语从句其实是中国同学们很熟悉的一种句式,但是对于 以有效的交流为高分标准的 IELTS 口语来说,定语从句已经是一种很好的特殊句式了。而 且《剑 12》的 Speaking 部分和 Listening 部分里就出现了不少定语从句,您完全可以放心 使用:

 A company that brings out thousands of new products may seem more creative than a company that only has a few.

O Describe a film actor in your country who is very popular.

The website provides live chat, which is very helpful.

❷ 虚拟语气

听起来很神奇,其实说白了就是用过去的时态表示现在或者将来的事情,表示比较客气的假设或者建议。虚拟语气是受过良好教育的 native speakers 在口语对话时很常用的一种特殊句式,而且也是《剑 12》的 Speaking 部分和 Listening 部分里的常客之一。

◇ If you could change your name, would you? (很客气地假设)

○ They might try to find people who all use a particular product. (也是很客气地

假设)

◇ It could be a good thing for the town of Horton. (很客气地提出建议)

REAR HERE HERE HERE HERE HERE HERE

定语从句和虚拟语气虽好,但也请您注意不要使用过度,因为在短短的11~ 14 分钟口试时间里用得太多那它们也就不"特殊"了。

*

RSHIT HAR STRUCTURE STRUCT

ĩ

the second second second second

ľ.

ج ا

Day 6



Pronunciation Counts.

Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

Let's take a break from the day. And get back to the old garage. Come and take control. Find out all the strengths you have inside yourself.
* www.bbc.co.uk/coerldservice/learningenglish/grammar/pron*

要练出不错的发音,除了积极模仿本书音频里的英国 SG 和 MM, 还可以登录上面的这个 BBC 官方网站,发音部分很酷。

* www.howjsay.com 与 www.inogoto.com

如果你遇到即使查过词典但还是拿不准发音的单词, 请立刻 登录左边的这个网站, 它会带你朗读所有的英语常用词。而右边 的这个网站则专门提供对人名、地名等专有名词的朗读。

> We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.

Native 的发音需要长期积累, attractive 的发音需要专业训练, 但 decent 的发音是有可能在短时间内就练成的。

多短呢?也许,一天……

三大纪律

💶 Day 5

☆ 少看理论 ☆

关于英语发音的书面理论不管听起来多么玄妙,它们其实只会让你的中文 reading 能力越来越强。靠研究书面理论去提高英语的发音要比让老外区分张馨予、张予曦、张雨 绮的名字更有挑战。

☆ 集中精力 ☆

只要开始练习,你就必须把TV set, PC, laptop, tablet, iPod Touch, smartphone 等干扰源全部关掉,完全投入到战斗中(Throw yourself into it.),唯一允许留在你身边的 电子产品是一个录音设备(a recording device)。

☆ 听自己说

身边放一个录音笔,这样进步更快。实在不好意思就把你身边的人都赶走,并且规定 一个小时之后才能回来,"no zuo no die"。

适合国内同学的英文单词发音测验 A Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

请您先做三个小测验,这些词都是 Pat 总结的中国考生最常见的发音错误,看看现在你属于哪种水平。测试的时候请和音频里的录音随时对比。

☆ TEST 1 — EASY

第一个测试很简单,是看你能不能达到中国学生英语发音的平均水平,如果错了5个 或以上,那你的英语现在就肯定处在中国人能听懂你的意思,但是外国人完全听不明白你 在说什么的状态。

57



TEST 2 — HARDER

第二个测试难度大一些,如果这些词你的发音全都正确,你的发音就处在 native English speakers 能比较轻松地听懂的状态。



发音的"八项注意"

听来听去,国内的考生发音其实只有8种常见错误。如果8种错误都能改掉,发音虽然还不完美,但是已经完全可以让老外轻松地听懂你说的英语了。

1. 应该是长音还是短音?

Pat 经常听到学生会把 meal 说成 mill,把 sheet 读成 shit,甚至还有人把 beach 说成 bitch,真不知是故意地还是误伤。请一定仔细跟音频朗读下面的单词:



2. 力度够不够?

北京话讲究的是轻快,所以很多北京考生在说英语的时候发音力度不够,把 because 发成"笔铐子", sorry 说成"骚瑞", apple 说成"挨剖",都是因为发音的力度不够。 请来自北京方向的读者仔细听 native speakers 怎样朗读下面的单词:

net Patrick (有无数北京孩子把 Pat 英文名字里的 Pa 轻轻松松地发成了"拍"的音) family kind easily because sorry apply

3. 到底有没有儿化音?

北方话,特别是北京话,儿化音超多。像"冰棍儿"如果说成"冰棍",就会让人 不寒而栗。但是 Pat 要特别提醒来自中国北方的同学注意:对于不含r这个字母的单词, 即使在美国,也是并不会有儿化音的。

请来自北方的读者认真跟音频朗读下面的单词:

famous

panda grandpa gorg

gorgeous difficult

4. th 到底怎么说?

中文里面没有th 这个音,所以要发好这个音还真是要好好练一练。关键是舌尖儿 要伸到上牙的外面一点点(不要太多,否则会很难看),而且轻轻地碰到上牙,然后轻 轻吹一口气,效果就出来了。如果是 these 里面的 th,也需要把舌尖伸出到上牙的外面 一点点,轻轻地在上牙上面摩擦一下,就好了。请您放下面子,虚心跟音频朗读下面的 单词:

thought threat throw although that those

5. 如何区分1和 n?

这两个音在中国南方的一些地区经常有考生分不清。另外 Pat 还发现一些说粤语的同学,有时候习惯把 fat 里面的 t 省掉了,把 report 里面的 t 也省掉了,也请务必注意改正。 请南方的读者仔细跟音频模仿下面单词的发音:

night light slow snow money (有些南方同学会把这个词说得像英文 里面的女孩名字 Molly,如果您也有这个问题那么请一定注意跟着录音积极模仿)

🔩 Day 6

6. 重音究竟在哪儿?

对于雅思考生来说,把重音位置发正确是比较高的要求了。但重音的位置发错,小则 听起来很别扭,大则会导致考官难以理解你的意思。请读者仔细跟音频模仿下面单词的 发音,并且特别注意正确的重音位置:

comfortable newspaper atmosphere celebrity photography yesterday temperature

7. v 和 w 的区别

准确区分这两个音的关键是牢记:发 v 的音时上牙会碰到下嘴唇,但是发 w 的音上牙 不碰下嘴唇。请您仔细跟音频模仿下列单词的发音。

swim win visit

violin

wife

8. 是否会适当地连订

弱化和连读是区分发音高手和莱鸟的重要依据,所以我们把这两项放在一起练习。请 推, 文明· 林 「FIELTS 下載 您仔细听音频的朗读,认真模仿下面的发音。

part-time

but now

PIL

He'll

what's

Where is she?

give me an answer

three hundred years

it used to be

You should take care of them.

the gap between the urban area and the rural area



对于备考时间紧但又对自己的发音没有信心的同学,如果您 对某个词甚至句子的发音不确定,也许会选择查字典。其实可以 试试 www.ivona.com。删掉对话框里的 "Hello there, my name is …" 那段话,在对话框里输入你自己想说的话,再点击 Play 就好 了。它还允许你自己选择英音还是美音、男声还是女声,而且语速 也挺有考试的感觉。

对于多数中国同学来说,通向完美、令人愉快的英语发音之旅在出国之后还要继续走 下去,这应该也正是各位下决心出国留学的动力之一。今天我们先练习到这里,您现在 可以打开手机刷一会儿朋友圈了。☺ ESESTIMATION STRATES

7 Day



Giving Short and Direct Answers

Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

Modern designs can be amazing, with just being simple and plain.

🖅 口语 Part 1 话题库索引

_₀Day 7____

Topic 1: Studies	① 学习 (含学习英语)	P65
Topic 2: Work	② 工作	P68
Topic 3: Hometown	③ 家乡(含交通和污染)	
Topic 4: Films & TV	④ 电影和电视	P70
Topic 5: Advertising	5 广告	P74
Topic 6: Reading		P79
Topic 7: Computers & The Internet	⑥ 读书、报纸和杂志	P80
Topic 8: Mobile Phones	⑦ 计算机和互联网	P83
No.	⑧ 手机	P84
Topic 9: Clothing, Jewellery & Shopping	9 服装、首饰和购物	P86
Topic 10: Weather & Seasons	10 天气与季节	P88
Topic 11: The Arts	① 音乐、绘画与摄影	P90
Topic 12: People	12家人、朋友、邻居、团队	成员
Topic 13: Collection	①家人、朋友、邻居、团队, S	P94
Topic 14: Buildings	13 收藏	P98
	14 住所、博物馆、图书馆、老	建筑
Topic 15: Sports & Outdoor Activities		P99
Topic 16: Travel	⑤ 运动和户外活动	P102
Topic 17: Food & Cooking	10 旅行	P105
Topic 18: Colours & Numbers	17 饮食和做饭	P107
	18 颜色和数字	P110
Topic 19: Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds	19 公园、植物、动物、鸟类	P111
Topic 20: Celebration & Rest	20节日、聚会、礼物、跳舞和	睡眠
		P116

Part 1 的素材工具箱

🛃 Day 7-

作为 IELTS 口试的开场白, 口语 Part 1 的话题都是生活里常见的 (您可以在 Pat 的博 客 blog. sina. com. cn / ieltsguru 上看到本月最新的口语预测题)。

British Council 对 Part 1 答案长度的要求 Remember to keep your Part 1 answers short and direct (简短的、直接的). In general, your answers in Part 1 should be 2 or 3 sentences. Your examiner may interrupt (打断) you if you give a very long answer in Part 1. 也就是说:好的 Part 1 答案长度是 2 ~ 3 句话,如果非要跟考官"长篇大论", 考官有可能会打断你的回答,请把深入交谈的能量留给你的 Part 3。

British Council 对 Part 1 答案态度的要求 A negative answer is just as good as a positive one.也就是说:只要英文正确,一个肯定的答案或者一个否定的答案都是你的 考官乐于接受的。Pat 对每一个 topic 都同时提供了正、反两方面的 ideas 和词汇,您可以 根据自己的实际需要来选择(请参考 Day 2 里的答案实例)。您还可以在本书附赠的《高 频词汇 & 短语速查手册》里看到更多 Part 1 的加分词汇和短语。

Part 1 的话题都是日常生活话题,而且每道题只要求回答 2 ~ 3 句话,说多了考官还 可能会善意地打断你,所以准备起来还是比较容易的。练习预测题的时候请给自己录音, 而且也不要忘了"揪出"自己的语法错误。 · MEISTEL TS TA



Studies (including learning English) 学 🤰 (含学习英语)

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
My university has a good reputation.	It's not a well-known university (它的知
♦ a good reputation 是"良好的声誉"	名度并不高).
It has an attractive campus. ♦ attractive 是"有吸引力的"	The campus (校园) is too small and crowded (拥挤的).
★ Most of my professors are friendly and	Many students are not really motivated to
helpful .	learn.
近义 kind and helpful	♦ motivated 是指"很有动力的"

★ I'm sure all my hard work will pay off (会有回报).

Day 7_

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ They encourage us to think independently (独立地思考).	★ We're not encouraged to share ideas ◆ share ideas 是"分享想法"
★ We can choose from a wide variety o (多种多样的) courses.	f Some of the courses are too hard for me.
★ The university provides a friendly learning environment (友好的学习氛围).	
 ★ There are a variety of extracurricular activities (课外活动) we can enjoy, like the debate club, the chess club, the university newspaper, the choir (含唱团) and even a rock band. ● "学校的社团"在地道英文里就叫某某 club, 这里并非指俱乐部 	1 time-consuming 是"很耗时间的"
I do voluntary work at the university library. 建实做 voluntary work 是英美考官们相 当希望听到的一种经历,而且他们自己从 小到大也都做过很多次 volunteers(志愿者)	I have a heavy class load this term. 我这 学期的课业负担很重。 ● 在大学里当您听到别人说 workload 的 时候其实也是指课业负担
The canteen / cafeteria serves good food at reasonable prices. 大学和中学的"食堂"叫 cafeteria 或 者 canteen 都可以, reasonable prices 就是 合理的价格"	The canteen / cafeteria food is gross (差 得出奇的). 體 雅思口试时不能说 yucky X

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
	We're not well prepared for the job market (就业市场).
We're well prepared for employment (为 就业做好充分的准备).	● 在地道英文里 the job market 是泛指整个就业市场,而中文所说的"人才交流会"在英文里是叫作 a job fair

Studies 学习 Learning English 学英语

John	
It's important to be bili	ngual (双语的) today.
FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Understanding English heips me better understand English-speaking cultures.	You are considered "left behind" if you can't speak English.
⇒"双语的"bilingual 有很多考生认识, 但口试时却往往会忘记你自己其实就是 bilingual	· 听说技能 listening and speaking skills, 读写技能 reading and writing skills, "发 展"某种技能最地道的动词就是 develop
★ Learning a foreign language helps us become more open-minded (思维更开 放的).	 ★ Learning a foreign language takes time and energy. ♦ takes time and energy 是 "需要投入时 间和精力"
★ People who are bilingual tend to have more job opportunities.	Learning a foreign language can be very challenging. ◆ challenging "有挑战的"
 ★ Singing along to English songs is a good way to improve my English pronunciation (发音). ♦ sing along to就是"跟着一起唱" 	

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Reading English novels and magazines is a good way to expand my vocabulary (扩展词汇量).	English grammar (语法) is very different from Chinese grammar.
I can understand English movies without reading the Chinese subtitles .	中文字幕叫作 Chinese subtitles , 用中文 配音的电影叫 films dubbed in Chinese

Pat 指南 / 工 -)

📢 Day 7.

☆ 良好的英语技能无疑会在就业市场中给我们带来明显的竞争优势,那么"竞争优势" 怎样用地道英文表达呢? native speakers 不说 a competition advantage X, 而会说a competitive advantage 文 或者 a competitive edge $\sqrt{}$

Good English skills can give us a competitive advantage / a competitive edge in the job market.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
 ★ I have a fun and rewarding (很有回报的) job. ♦ rewarding 既可以指物质上很有回报的,也可以指心理上很有回报的 	My job is dull and boring (乏味的, 枯燥的).
The salary (工资) is good. 同义表达是 The pay is good . 请注意 这句话里的 pay 不要说成 payment	 I'm really tired of working for peanuts (挣 钱少). ♦ native speakers 经常把挣钱少叫作"为 了花生而工作"

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
My job provides me with a variety of benefits, like health insurance (医疗保 险), paid holidays (带薪休假) and a pension (养老金) plan. ◆ native speakers 常用 benefits 来指"工 作福利"	We don't have equal opportunities for promotion (提职).
★ My boss treats everyone fairly.	My boss is a slave driver (真不把员工当人
 ★ My colleagues (同事) are friendly and helpful ♦ native speakers 也经常把同事称为 co- workers 	Some of my co-workers are rude and selfish (自私的).
I have a nine-to-five job. ● 一份"朝九晚五"的工作在地道英文 里就叫 a nine-to-five job	★ I often have to work overtime (加班).
★ My job provides the opportunity to develop new skills (发展新的技能).	It's a dead-end job (没前途的工作)。
Employees are paid time-and-a-half (150%) if they work at weekends. 會 在英美,员工在周末或者公共假日 (public holidays) 上班一般能获得 150% 或者 double time (200%) 的酬劳	I've never been paid for the extra work (额外的工作).

Pat 指南

My job gives me a sense of satisfaction. (我的工作给我一种满足感) 是英美人说很 喜欢自己的工作时特别常说的一句话。 如果对自己的工作并不满意呢?不管是工作的原因还是自己的原因, native speakers 常说的一句话都是: I don't feel motivated at work (我上班的时候完全没动力), 然后就 是一脸无辜的表情……

压力很大的工作叫 a stressful job, 很难保持工作和家庭之间的平衡英文叫 I find it hard to keep a balance between work and family.



💶 Day 7-

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
It's a city in the northeast (东北部) of China. ◆ northwest (西北部), southwest (西南 部), southeast (东南部), 如果要说中国 的中部地区, 那就是 central China	★ The cost of living (生活成本) there is quite high.
It's a coastal city (沿海城市) and has gorgeous (非常美的) beaches.	It has long and windy winters.
It's an inland (内陆的) city and is surrounded by beautiful rolling hills. ♦ rolling hills 是起伏的小山丘,而 high mountains 则是高山	It's hot and dry (又热又干燥的) in the summer. 億 "又热又潮湿的"是 hot and humid
 ★ The city is well-known for its cultural attractions (文化景点). ♦ attraction 在英文里经常表示"景点" 	Many historical buildings have been replaced by modern high-rise buildings (高层建筑).
★ The city attracts (吸引) many tourists each year.	The locals have become too materialistic (过于物质化的,只在乎金钱和物质享受的). ● 英文里常用 the locals 来指"当地人"

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
 ★ It has a long and rich history. ◆ a rich history 并不是"富裕的历史", 而是指"丰富的历史" 	Many traditions have been lost. (很多传 统被遗忘了)
I live in the countryside (乡村). The cost of living is low and the pace of life (生活 节奏) is slow.	Young people tend to think the country- side is boring.
Most people there have a simple and laid- back lifestyle. 步容词 laid-back 是"心态平和、与世 无争的"	★ The pace of life is fast and stressful (让人感觉"压力山大"的).
 ★ Most people are friendly and beloful and there is a strong sense of community. ♦ a strong sense of community (很强的"社区感",很强的社区凝聚力) 	I don't even know my neighbours (甚至 不认识自己的邻居).
My hometown has lots of things for young people, such as cinemas, karaoke bars and sports centers. 卡拉 OK 斤叫 karaoke lounge 或者 karaoke bar 都可以,第一次"考察" 北京的卡拉 OK 斤时 Pat 真的感觉被震撼 到了 (I was totally amazed.),相比之下 英美城市里的卡拉 OK 厅都实在太"低 调"(humble)了 ②	It's not a good place for young people because there aren't many leisure facilities there, and the nightlife is dull and boring. ◆ There aren't many job opportunities for young people. "年轻人的就业机会不多"

城市里常见的 leisure facilities (休闲设施): cinemas, concert halls, museums, art galleries (美术馆, 画廊), parks, restaurants, coffee shops, shopping centers, sports centers

Hometown 家乡 Traffic & Pollution 交通和污染

📢 Day 7_

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
More and more people can afford (买得起) a car. ◆ car owners 有车的人,"车主"	There are too many cars on the road, and it's always hard to find a parking space . (虽然 space 一般不可数,但"停车位" parking space 在英文里却是可数的)
★ Driving is an important life skill (生活 技能). ♦ Driving makes my life easier.	I often get stuck in heavy traffic. ◆ get stuck in是国外生活中相当常用的 一个短语: 被困住
 ★ It's important to learn how to drive safely and be a polite driver. ♦ drive safely 安全行车, polite driver 有礼貌的驾驶员 	 ★ There're lots of dangerous drivers (不考 虑后果的司机) out there. They just don't follow traffic rules (不遵守交通规则). ◆ dangerous drivers 当然应该受到惩罚 (should be punished),不过今年年初在 美国最新公布的一项民意调查显示公众 一致认为最可怕的司机其实是 slow drivers ☺
 ★ We should use public transport (公共 交通) more often. Using public transport is more eco-friendly than driving a car. ♦ eco-friendly 有益于环保的 	Public transport in my hometown is not reliable (不可靠的). ◆ The buses never arrive on time (公车从 来都不准时到).
★ Many people walk or cycle to work. ● 地道短语 walk or cycle to work 的意思 是"步行或骑自行车上班"	★ The buses are overcrowded (过于拥挤的).

1851	AGAINST (反方)	FOR (正方)
马峰期) 车行缓	The traffic is always bumper-to-bun during the rush hour . (上下班高峰; ◆ bumper-to-bumper traffic 就是车 慢、"让马路变成停车场"的拥挤交	The city is very walkable. It's easy to get around on foot. walkable (适合步行的) 是西方国家评 价城市生活 (urban living) 的重要标准 之一,也可以说 pedestrian-friendly,人 行道在英国叫作 pavement,斑马线在英 国叫 zebra crossing
ne(很均	The traffic noise really bothers me (人).	★ It's quiet and peaceful (宁静安详的).
英国的访	说法)	When I'm in a hurry, I take the subway (法) / the Tube (伦敦人 Londoners 特有的
141		

- ☆ 比较拿分的交通工具(即使您没乘坐过也可以放心说,因为它们都是地道的英文 ④):
 minibus(中巴); shuttle bus(班车或机场巴士); ferry(轮渡); light railway / light rail (轻轨); motorcycle taxi("摩的")
- ☆ 很重的雾霾英文叫作 thick smog, 形容雾霾很重的形容词则是 smoggy
- ☆ air pollution 空气污染, water pollution 水污染, noise pollution 噪音污染
- ☆ 汽车尾气叫 car fumes 或者 exhaust fumes 都可以,而工厂排出的浓烟则是 factory fumes

🔩 Day 7-

Topic	Films	& TV
04	影	视

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I'm really into animated films (动画片). ◆ I'm really into在地道英文里就是说 自己非常喜欢某类事物、对某类事物很 "投入"	Going to the cinema is a waste of time and money (又花时间又花钱)
★ I prefer films with good acting (演 技).	The special effects (特效) in this film are amazing (令人惊叹的).
He's well-known for his acting stills (他 是个"演技派").	He relies too much on his looks (过度依赖外表,"靠脸吃饭").
★ I like films with a happy ending (有圆 满的结局).	The soundtrack (电影原声音乐) of this film is just okay — nothing special ("一般般",并不是很出色).
★ This film is based on a true story (取 材于一个真实的故事).	The storyline of this film is too far- fetched.(故事情节太牵强了) 色电影的"故事情节"就是 storyline, 也有些 native speakers 把它叫作 plot
 ★ Some films are fun and entertaining (有趣而且娱乐性很强的). ☆ 上座率很高的电影叫作 a box-office hit 	★ I don't like films that are too predicta- ble (看了开头就知道结尾的那种).
Some films are thought-provoking (发人 深思的).	This film is too serious (过于严肃的).
Sci-fi films stimulate our imagination (激 发我们的想象力).	♦ sci-fi films 是科幻片,外星人就叫 aliens

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Some films can bring back good memo-	Some action films (动作片) are too violent (暴力的).
ries (带来美好的回忆).	● 英雄当然就是 heroes,反派则是 villains
★ This film is moving and unforgettable (很感人的、令人难忘的).	★ It's dull and boring (乏味、枯燥的).
 ★ This film has a strong cast. (演员的	My favourite star had a bit part (客串的
阵容很强大) ♦ cast 就是指"演员的阵容"	小角色) in it.
Leonardo DiCaprio played the lead (演主	Margot Robbie played opposite him . (和
角儿) in this film.	他演对手戏)

- ☆ 高成本电影叫 big-budget film, 相应地/成本电影就叫 small-budget film
- 章 以下这些闪光的人名都是 Pat 发现国内同学们最容易读错的明星名字,请仔细听音频。
 - Leonardo DiCaprio 环保主义者 (environmentalist) 莱昂纳多・迪卡普里奥的名字 读错率一直稳居榜首,这比说"岁月是一把杀猪刀"更让"小李子"感到痛心
 - Beyoncé Knowles 这位美女勇夺 2017 年格莱美 Best Music Video 大奖,但其实她 的名字正确发音并不是"碧昂斯"
 - Anne Hathaway 她演的《公主日记》很多同学应该都看过
 - 基努・里维斯有 1/8 的印第安人血统,所以有一个原住民的名字 Keanu Reeves
 - Emma Watson 小时候是《哈利·波特》里的 Hermione Granger,长大了是《美 女与野兽》里的 Belle, 在现实生活里还是常春藤盟校 Brown University 的毕业生, 但 Pat 注意到有些同学把她名字里的字母 t 和 s 分开读, 可就不对了
 - 《拯救大兵瑞恩》里的男主角,他在 The Martian (《火星救援》)里 Matt Damon 面的演技也受到很高的评价 (received good reviews),《长城》 (The Great Wall) 里的男主角同样是他

• David Beckham 小贝虽然不是影星,但他的姓却总是被国内同学念错,也一起放进来吧

说来说去,名字最不容易发错音的还是超模 Kate Moss 和成功摆脱了"单身男神"称 号的 George Clooney,所以他俩必须红 ☺

In The Cinema (在电影院看电影)	At Home (在家看电影)
★ Cinemas can provide a more fun and enjoyable viewing experience. (提供更 有趣、更令人愉快的观赏体验)	It's more convenient (更方便) to watch a film at home.
A cinema screen (屏幕) is much larger than a TV screen.	I have a large collection (收藏) of DVDs.
The colours also look more vivid (更鲜明的).	 ★ Watching a film at home helps me save time and money (既省时间又省钱). ● 请不要说你有看"盗版碟" (pirated DVDs) 的习惯
The sound quality (音质) in the cinema is better than at home.	I have a home cinema system at home. ●家庭影院系统叫 home cinema system 或者 home theater system
We share the fun and excitement with other people in the audience.	Some people find it hard to concentrate on films at home.

Pat 指南

🔩 Day 7

- ☆ 还可以说 Cinemas offer a wide variety of (多种多样的) snacks (零食).
- ☆ 三维立体电影就是 3-D film

Watching a 3-D film in the cinema can be really exciting.

Films & TV 影视 Television 电视

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Watching TV is fun . It's a good way to relax .	Watching TV is a waste of time (浪费时间).
 ★ This show is informative. It provides a variety of useful information. ● 形容词 informative 是"信息量很大 的", a variety of 是"多种多样的" 	看电视的人叫作 a TV viewer 或者 TV viewers,看电视的观众群可以总称为 audience
★ This TV show is very entertaining (娱 乐性很强的). It has attracted many viewers (吸引了大量观众).	地道英文里常把能够让人放松的事物称为 a stress-reliever
It's a very creative (有创意的) TV show.	The storyline is too predictable (剧情毫 无悬念)
Travel shows can expand our horizons (开阔我们的眼界). They help us learn about other places and other cultures.	On the other hand, the information they provide is not always reliable (并不总是 可靠的).
★ Sometimes I just surf through the channels (不停换台寻找自己喜欢的频道, "频道冲浪").	People who watch too much TV tend to have an unhealthy lifestyle .
People enjoy conversations (谈话) about the TV shows that they like.	Watching too much TV gives you square eyes.(在英美有一种说法:看电视太多 眼睛会变成方形)

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Watching TV together helps us build strong family ties. ◆ build strong family ties 是"增进亲情" 的意思,也可以说 strengthen family ties	★ Watching too much TV increases the risk of heart disease and high blood pressure (增加患高血压和心脏病的风险).
Watching TV can help children expand their vocabulary. ◆ expand their vocabulary 是"扩大词汇 量"	 ★ Young people tend to copy what they see on TV (模仿他们在电视上看到的内容). ◆ violent images 暴力的画面 sexual images 色情的画面
Some TV commercials (电视广告) are good source of fun. ◆ a good source of fun 很好的生活乐趣来 源, a good source of information 很好的 信息来源	There're too many commercials during prime-time hours (黃金时段), which really bothers me (让我很烦).

Pat指南

🔩 Day 7

☆ TV programmes 的常见种类:

TV series (系列剧), sitcoms (情景喜剧), reality show (真人秀), quiz show (问 答节目), variety show (综艺节目), news show (新闻节目), game show (有奖 竞赛节目), travel show (旅游节目), documentaries (纪录片,例如 Discovery Channel 和 National Geographic Channel 播放的节目), 脱口秀 (这个太简单,自己 说吧) ③

☆ 系列剧的"一集"叫 an episode, "一季"叫 a season, 它吸引了很多人来"追剧" 的英文叫 It enjoys a huge following among viewers.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
 ★ Some TV commercials are very enter- taining (娱乐性很强的). ◆ advertisement 可以泛指任何形式的广 告, commercial 则是特指电视、收音机或 者互联网上面播放的广告 	★ They interrupt TV programmes (中 断电视节目). That really bothers me (让我很烦).
Some advertisements are fun and creative (有创意的), while others are dull and boring.	a memorable slogan 很容易记住的广告词, 比如 Reebok 的"I am what I am.", LG 的"Life's good.", Nike 的"Just do it." 和蚂蚁金服的"每个认真生活的人,都 值得被认真对待。"
They help me better understand new products.	Advertising encourages (鼓励) us to buy things we don't really need.
★ Good advertisements are informative (信息量很大的).	 ★ Many advertisements are aimed at children and teenagers. ◆ are aimed at针对这个群体
They really attract our attention (吸引我 们的注意力). ♦ advertising campaign 大规模的广告系列 宣传活动	Some advertisements provide false and misleading (虚假的、有误导性的) information.
Advertising makes products more attrac- tive to consumers.	Children often put pressure on their parents to buy the toys advertised on TV.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
The advertising industry creates many jobs (创造很多就业机会) and contrib- utes to the economy.	Advertising is just a marketing tool (营销 手段) for companies.
♦ contribute to the economy 为经济做出贡献	the real of the second second second second

Pat 指南

_ Day 7_

☆ 公益广告叫 public service advertisements

Public service advertisements educate people about health, safety or the en. ABJ BEITRALES AND . MEISIEL VST environment.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ I'm an avid reader (特别爱读书的人).	● 只要考到和 reading 有关的题你就必须 要想到 an avid /'ævid/ reader 这个说法, 因为在 native speakers 谈读书时它实在是 太常用了
★ Reading expands our horizons (开阔我 们的眼界).	Watching TV and playing video games can be more entertaining (更有娱乐性的).
★ This book is fun and enjoyable (有趣 而且令人愉快的).	This book is dull and boring (乏味、枯燥的).

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I liked the book so much that I couldn't put it down(爱不释手).	地道英文里还有一种说法是 read a book from cover to cover(从封面一直看到封底,一页也不舍得错过)
★ Reading English books is a good way to expand my English vocabulary (扩展 英语的词汇量).	Our university library doesn't provide many English books.
Electronic books take up less space (占 的空间更小) and are easier to carry (更 便于携带). ◆ electronic books 电子书,也可以叫 e- books	I find it harder to concentrate (集中精 力) when I read on a screen (屏幕).
E-books are more eco-friendly (更有益于 环保的). They help to save trees (保护 树木).	Reading e books for too long really hurts my eyes (伤视力).

Pat指南

☆ 说"一本书好看"在地道英文里有个说法叫 It's a good read. 语法貌似是错的,但其 实它是英文口语里经常听到的一句话。话说 Pat 上学时曾在图书馆找到了一本 On the Road (在路上),拿给图书管理员正准备 check out 时, librarian 突然就来了句: It's a good read.

😭 有几种书值得一说 (虽然并不一定值得一看):

literary classics (文学经典), suspense novels (悬念小说), cookery books (教你做 菜的书), travel guides (旅行指南)

💶 Day 7.

Reading 读书、报纸和杂志 Newspapers & Magazines 报纸和杂志

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Newspapers are a good source of information (是很好的信息来源).	 ◆ information 不能加复数, IELTS 口试里 同样不能加复数的名词还有 knowledge, advice, behaviour, equipment 和 scenery
Local newspapers tend to focus on things that affect the local area.	Some local newspapers are full of ads (广告太多).
International newspapers cover a wide variety of topics.	"时事"叫作 current events
★ The articles (文章) are well-write	"页面布局很合理的"英文是 The pages are well laid-out.
Browsing through fashion magazines is a good way to relax.	This magazine is not very informative (信
◆ browse though magazines 是 " 翻 阅 杂志"	All and a set of the
This magazine is aimed at young readers.	◆ This magazine is aimed at (某类人) 的意思是"这本杂志的目标读者群是"

Pat 指南 / 工

- ☆ 报纸常见的版块 (sections): business section (商务版块), financial section (金融版块), entertainment section (娱乐版块), sports section (体育版块), classified ads (分类广告)
- ☆ 在地道英文里特指报纸或者杂志的销量有一个专门的词叫作 circulation。

This newspaper has a good reputation (声誉好) and a large circulation (销量大).



Computers & The Internet 计算机和互联网

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Computers make our lives more conven- ient (更方便).	★ It's important not to rely too much on (不过度地依赖) computers.
★ There are many <u>educational games</u> on the Internet, such as maths games and language games. ◆ educational games 益智游戏	Looking at a computer screen for too long hurts my eyes (伤视力).
The Internet has become an indispensable part of our lives (我们生活里不可或缺的 一个部分).	★ Many children are addicted to (对 上瘾) computer games.
★ People who have good computer skills tend to have more job opportunities (有 更多的就业机会).	People who spend too much time on the Internet tend to have an unhealthy lifestyle (过着不健康的生活方式).
The Internet is a good source of informa- tion (是很好的信息来源). ◆ search engine 搜索引擎, find informa- tion easily 轻松地找到信息	Some websites contain violent images (含有暴力的画面).
★ Online shopping helps us save time and money · ◆ save time and money 既省钱又省时间	Online crime (网络犯罪) is increasing.





Pat指南

- ☆ 电子邮件 (email) 的好处则是 tree, easy to send 而且 can be delivered very quickly
- ☆ 书信的好处则是 can better express our feelings (能更好地表达我们的感受), 而且 Business letters are more formal than business emails.

Computers & The Internet 计算机和互联网 Handwriting 笔迹

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
ALE MAN	Messy (混乱的, 潦草的) handwriting
* Good handwriting is easy to read.	can be confusing and annoying.
◆ neat and tidy 干净整洁的	◆ confusing 令人困惑的, annoying 让人 很烦的, embarrassing 令人羞愧的, 让人
	很"囧"的
Handwriting needs to be practised regularly (经常练习,经常实践).	★ Children shouldn't rely too much on typing (打字).
	· / 31



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Mobile phones help us keep in touch with (保持联系) family and friends.	★ These days, people have fewer face- to-face conversations.
与亲友"保持联系"的另一种地道说 法是 stay connected with family and friends	 ♦ face-to-face conversations 面对面的谈话

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
We can also surf the Internet, listen to music and take photos with our mobile phones. 會上网在英美生活里也可以叫 browse the Web	★ Many people rely too much on (过度 地依赖) mobile phones. ♦ are addicted to对上瘾
Smartphones are fun and entertaining (娱 乐性很强的). ♦ smartphone 智能手机	Playing mobile games (手机游戏) can be an expensive hobby.
Text messages are less expensive than phone calls.	I call my friends when I need to have real conversations (谈话) with them.
★ Text messages work better in a public place (公共场所).	Making phone calls is more likely to distract other people around me. more likely to 更有可能会 distract others 干扰别人的注意力
★ We have more time to think before responding to (回应) a text message.	Using emoticons (表情符号,也可以叫 emojis) in text messages is fun, but they may cost extra money.
ANDROID PHONE	iPhone
 ★ Android phones are very user-friendly (便于使用的). ♦ Android phones 基于安卓系统的手机, 也可以叫 Android-based phones 	It seems iPhones are more reliable (更可 靠的). 遭 如果您觉得安卓手机更可靠考官也同 样没脾气,他/她的任务是判断你的英 文口语是否地道,而不是鉴定你到底是 "果粉"还是"果黑"③

85

ANDROID PHONE	iPhone
They are less expensive.	My iPhone is very thin and light (很薄很轻的).
There're more free apps (应用程序) available for Android phones.	The screen is gorgeous (特别"靓"的).

💶 Day 7-

Topic Clothing, Jewellery & Shopping 09 服装,首饰和购物	
FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
 ★ I like casual clothes, such as T-shirts, and jeans (牛仔裤). ◆ casual clothes 休闲服装, "帽衫儿" 叫作 hoodie, 休闲短裤当然就是 shorts 	 ★ People are supposed to wear formal clothes, like white shirts (白衬衣) and trousers (长裤) in the office. ◆ suit 是指套装, 比如 business suit 就是 "西装",关于着装的规定叫作 dress code
★ Casual clothes make us feel more comfortable and relaxed	Formal clothes make us look perious and professional (职业的).
I prefer comfort over fashion (觉得舒适 比时尚更重要).	Many people are fashion victims . They choose fashion over comfort (宁可不舒服也要看起来"潮"). ♦ fashion victim 过度追逐时尚的人
★ Clothing is a good way to express ourselves (表达自己的一种方式).	Some people have bad spending habits (不良的消费习惯). ♦ buy things on an impulse (冲动地购物).

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Designer clothes are often considered status symbols(身份和地位的象征). ♦ designer clothes 就是地道英文里对 "名牌服装"最常用的说法	These days, people have become too materialistic(过于物质化的,只在乎金钱 和物质享受的).
Wearing jewellery makes me feel more confident (感觉更自信).	I am very forgetful (健忘的) and lose things easily.
Wearing jewellery is a good way to express myself.	Some people wear expensive jewellery to show off their wealth (炫富).
I believe it brings me good luck (给我带 来好运).	在地道英文里如果说 It's my lucky charm.,就是说你相信这件首饰会给你 带来好运气
It was a birthday gift from my parents so it has a lot of personal meaning to me (对我来说有重要的个人意义).	英美生活里常见的 jewellery 有: wedding ring (婚戒), engagement ring (订婚戒 指), graduation ring (有些英美大学里的 毕业生在毕业典礼时戴的戒指,而且很多 人到毕业后也一直戴着), earrings (耳
I wear it simply because it looks good. ♦ jewellery 是不可数名词,如果要说 "一件首饰",请说a piece of jewellery	环), necklace(比較細而且有装饰的项链,大多数的女士项链是 necklace), chain(比较粗而且不带装饰的项链,多数 的男式项链是 chain), bracelet(手镯或 手链英文里都叫 bracelet)
I shop till I drop (生命不息, 购物不止, "买买买"). ● 这是喜欢"血拼"的 native speakers 特别爱说的一句话, 也可以说 I'm a real shopaholic (如假包换的"购物狂").	· consumer culture is in it is a set

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Many people follow the latest trends be- cause they want to look "cool" or popular. keep up with fashion trends 追求时尚、 紧跟潮流	I just stick to (坚持) my own style.
★ Online shopping helps us save time and money. It's also more eco-friendly (更环保).	I can't try on clothes (试穿) online.



💶 Day 7-

- ☆ 卖服装和饰品的精品店叫作什么?在英美最常用的一个词是 boutique (请仔细听音频 THE AND INTERIOR 里对这个词的正确发音)
- ☆ "忠实的顾客" 叫 loyal customers



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ I like bright and sunny (阳光灿烂的) weather.	Rainy weather affects my mood (影响我 的心情). ◆ Heavy rain makes driving difficult (导致 行车困难) or even dangerous.
★ Sunny and warm weather is perfect for outdoor activities, such as jogging (慢 跑), camping (宿营) and hiking (徒步 旅行,远足).	sunny and breezy weather 是"风和日丽的天气"

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I like light rain (小雨). The sound of raindrops (雨点儿) falling on the ground is very relaxing.	But I feel upset when it pours. ♦ drizzle 下小雨, pour 下大雨, 描述心 情不好时 upset 极为常用, 就像中文里说 "郁闷的"
★ I like walking in light rain. It makes me feel fresh and energetic. 短 短语 feel fresh and energetic 的意思是 "感觉很有活力"	Heavy rain can make the road muddy and slippery and cause traffic jams. It may even cause flooding (洪水).
★ This city has four distinct seasons (分 明的四季).	常见的恶劣天气 (bad weather): thun- derstorm (暴风雨), snowstorm (暴风 雪)和 thick fog (浓雾)
The spring is warm and pleasant (温暖 的,令人愉快的). Everything feels so fresh and most plants bloom in the spring. ● 开花bloom,白天更长,夜晚更短 The days are longer and the nights are shorter.	
The summer is mild (温和的) and enjoyable.	湿的).
The city looks so beautiful with the autumn foliage. 章 短语 autumn foliage 是指秋叶, foliage <u>不能</u> 加复数, "观赏秋叶"的英文是 view the autumn foliage	◆ Pat 在中国时注意到有的英语老师教学 生用 chilly 这个词表示"很冷的",其实

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
It's a perfect place for winter sports (冬季运动).	The winter is cold, windy (风很大的)
♦ skating 滑冰, skiing 滑雪	and snowy (连续下雪的).

Pat 指南

🔩 Day 7-

- ☆ 中文里的"雪花"在地道英语里不能说 snowflower imes , 而是要说 snowflakes √;"堆雪人儿"不能说 pile a snowman X, 而要说 build a snowman \vee
- 堆雪, 说自己喜欢某个季节, autumn / winter. ③ ☆说自己喜欢来个季节的原因也可以是 My birthday is in the spring / summer/



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Listening to music is a good way to relax .	 I've never been to a live concert (现场音乐会). ♦ live 作形容词时的发音是/laiv/
This song makes me feel happy and energetic.	Loud music can distract drivers (干扰司 机的注意力).
Classical music (古典音乐) makes me feel calm and relaxed .	Some people think classical music is dull and boring .

Keep it natural.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
This is a memorable (很容易记住的) song.	Some country songs sound similar to (听起来很相似) others. ◆ country music 是特指美国的乡村音乐, 而 folk music 则可以指中国、英国等任何国家的传统民族音乐,也就是"民乐"
 ★ Playing musical instruments can make children more intelligent (更聪明的). ♦ boost brain development 促进大脑的发育 	Learning to play a musical instrument takes time and energy (需要投入时间和 精力).
Playing musical instruments can help to increase children's concentration (提高儿童们的注意力).	Learning to play an instrument takes a lot of patience (耐心) and practice (练习).
★ Playing musical instruments is a good way to express ourselves (表达自己感受 的一种好方法).	These days, learning to play an instru- ment can be very expensive.
This song is moving and unforgettable (感人的、令人难忘的).	This song lacks depth (缺乏深度).
Many people go to live concerts (现场音 乐会) to see their favourite musicians in person . ♦ see in person 看到本人,看到 "活的"☺	Concert tickets can be pricey . ● 英美生活里常用 pricey 表示 expensive 的意思
We can make new friends at rock concerts.	Too many people scream (尖叫) at rock concerts.
-0 Day 7-

The Arts 音乐、绘画和摄影 Drawing & Painting 绘画

AGAINST (反方)
I can't paint well. I just paint for fun.
It takes time and energy to learn to paint well.
Students should spend more time on core subjects (核心课程), such as language, maths and science.
I can't understand abstract paintings (抽 藥画). ◆ realistic paintings 写实的画,具象画

☆ native speakers 说绘画、摄影等有创造力的爱好时,常会用到It's a creat phobby. 这 句话,既不难说,而且又很地道

The Arts 音乐、绘画和摄影 Photography 摄影

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Taking photos is a good way to express ourselves (表达自己感受的一种好方法).	We need to make sure we don't invade other people's privacy (侵犯别人的隐私)
♦ Photography is a creative hobby (有创造	when we take photos.
力的爱好).	♦ bother others 让别人很烦

Keep it natural.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Photos can bring back fond memories (可以带来美好的回忆).	Photos and videos take up a lot of space(占用很多空间) on my mobile phone.
My mobile phone has a <u>built-in camera</u> (内置相机).	I can easily slip it into my pocket (轻松 地放进口袋).
Taking selfies is fun.	★ Many people are addicted to (对 上瘾) taking selfies.
Good photos capture precious moments in life . ◆ capture precious moments in life 捕捉	Lighting (光线) is important to taking
人生里的宝贵瞬间", 它是 native speakers 谈摄影时特别爱用的一个 good phrase	good pictures.
Many people share photos online (在网络 上分享照片). ◆ photo-sharing website 照片分享网站, 例如 Instagram	Some people use Photoshop to make their photos look better. ◆ profile photo "头像" 照片

Pat指南

☆ portrait 和 landscape photo 分别是人像和风景照片

- ☆ 随时随地"抓拍" 叫作 snap some shots
- ☆"一个…… 百万像素的相机"英文是 a... megapixel camera

Topic People 12 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员

FAMILY (家人)	FRIENDS (朋友)
My parents are in their 40s / 50s / 60s 我的家长 40 多岁 (或者 50 多岁、60 多岁)	Most of my friends are around my age (和我年龄相仿).
 They work full-time (全职工作). ♦ work part-time 兼职工作 have retired 已经退休了 	 ★ My friends and I share the same interests (有共同的兴趣爱好). ● 也可以说 have common interests
My parents are my role models (是我的 榜样). 章 英美的年轻人说自己很敬佩父母时都 爱这么说	★ We get on very well (关系非常好, "合得来").
My parents are always understanding and patient with me (很体谅我而且很 有耐心).	My friends can always cheer me up (让 我开心、振作起来) when I'm upset (都 闷的).
My parents are very strict (要求很严格的).	★ Most of my friends are very sociable (喜欢社交的、外向的).
 ★ I use the Internet to keep in touch with my parents. ♦ keep in touch 保持联系, 网络摄像头叫 作 webcam 	Hanging out with my friends makes me happy. hang out 体闲放松
I have no siblings. ◆ siblings 是泛指"兄弟姐妹", cousins 是泛指"表兄弟或者表姐妹"	 It's easy to make new friends (结交新朋友) online. ♦ online forum 在线论坛, chatroom 聊天 室, social networking websites 社交网站, online community 网络社区

Keep it natural.

FAMILY (家人)	FRIENDS (朋友)
★ Having meals together as a family can strengthen family ties (增进亲情).	Some people choose to meet their online friends in person ("见网友").
My parents give me good advice about my education and career choices.	My friends often give me advice about food, shopping and entertainment.
 I help my parents with housework (家务). ♦ do the dishes (洗碗刷盘子) do the landry (洗衣服) do the cleaning (打扫房间) 	We shouldn't take our parents or friends for granted (我们不应该把家长或朋友为 我们做的事看成是理所应当的).
These days, people tend to live in small nuclear families rather than large extended families .	I live alone (独自生活) because I like being independent (独立的). But sometimes I feel lonely and unhappy.
♦ nuclear family 只有父母和孩子一起住的小家庭, extended family 三代人甚至四代人一起住的大家庭	■ 只要英文地道,考官就会很愿意和你 交流,虽然你不是黄致列 ☺
The one-child policy (独生子女政策) has been changed.	Now married couples are allowed to have two children.
Many grandparents help with childcare (帮助照看孩子).	Some grandparents spoil (溺爱) their grandchildren.

Pat指南

☆ "忠实的朋友"叫作 loyal friends,如果你觉得自己的朋友总是很可靠,除了可以说 I can always trust them. □语里也常说 I can always count on them.

📢 Day 7_

People 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员 Neighbours **邻居**

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ My neighbours are very friendly and helpful (很友好而且乐于助人的).	My neighbours are unfriendly and un- helpful. They don't even return things they've borrowed from me. 動 如果这么说,那就要满腔悲愤的 ③
★ They are polite and respectful (有礼貌、尊重别人的)	They are rude and noisy.
They never ask questions that are personal. ◆ They accept parcels for me (帮我收快 递) when I'm not at home.	They often have noisy parties (吵闹的聚 会). 每美人普遍重视隐私 (value their pri- vacy),所以 nosy neighbours (喜欢"打 听事儿"的邻居)和 noisy neighbours (吵闹的邻居) 一样都不受欢迎
 ★ I know my neighbours quite well (很熟悉自己的邻居). ♦ We get on well (关系好, "合得来"). 	They often play loud music and their dog barks(狗叫) at night. That really both- ers me(让我很烦).
I see them at least a few times a week .	I rarely see my neighbours (很少见到) although they live next door.

Pat 指南

☆ 住在"隔壁"的邻居叫作 my next-door neighbours,也可以说 They live next door.

Keep it natural.

People 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员 Team Members 团队成员

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
 ★ Teamwork (团队合作) can boost our efficiency. ♦ boost our efficiency 提升我们的效率 	Some team members may lack teamwork skills(缺乏团队合作的技能).
 ★ Team members need to work closely together (紧密地协作). ◆ work closely together 里面的 work 不仅可以指工作,也可以指学习、运动等需要认真努力才能完成的事情 	Some team members don't feel motivated (感觉没有动力). ◆ Sometimes team members don't work well together.
We need to work closely with our team- mates (队友) to achieve our common goal (实现共同的目标).	★ Some of them are selfish (自私的) and unkind (不友善的).
A strong team spirit (很强的团队精神) can help the team achieve success (获得 成功).	They don't care about their teammates.

Pat指南

☆ "团队运动"就是 team sport,例如: basketball, football 和 volleyball (排球): Team sports help children develop their communication skills (沟通能力).

💶 Day 7.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Collecting stamps can be a lifetime hobby (终生的爱好).	 ★ I used to collect stamps as a child. But now I collect music CDs. ◆ I used to as a child. But now I是 native speakers 在对比自己童年曾经有过 的习惯和现在的习惯有什么不同的时候 特别常用的一个句型
Collecting DVDs is fun and enjoyable (有 趣而且令人愉快的).	It can be an expensive hobby. ♦ Blu-ray 蓝光影碟
Some people think of collecting works of art as a good investment (很好的投资). ♦ works of art 艺术品	Many people collect things for pleasure (乐趣), not for poplit (利润).
Collecting things is a good way to gain new knowledge (获取新的知识).	Some people collect rare things just to show them off (炫耀). ◆ rare 稀有的

Pat指南 C

- ☆ 几种常见收藏品: stamps (邮票), music CDs (音乐光盘), coins (硬币), antiques (古董), souvenirs (旅游纪念品)
- ☆ 要说自己收藏了很多的……, native speakers 会说 I have a large (或者 big) collection of…..

I have a large collection of DVDs.

K_{eep} it natural.

Topic Buildings 14 住所,博物馆,图书馆,老建筑

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
My flat is just a five-minute-walk from my university campus. 他可以说 is just a short walk from	It's very far from where I work.
I live near a convenient bus route (公 车线).	It's in a friendly neighbourhood (居民区), but the location is not convenient at all.
The living room is spacious bright (宽敞明亮的) and it has a nice for of the city. 客厅里的常见装饰 (decorations) 有: potted plants (盆栽植物) family photos (家庭合影) paintings (绘画) posters (海报)	The living room is a bit dark because the windows are small, and I don't like the wall colour. 如果要说"想重新装饰这个房间", 地道英文会说 redecorate this room, 重 新刷漆是 repain the room, 换窗帘是 change the curtains, 换家具是 replace the furniture
★ The bedroom is nice and comfortable. ●房间很舒适也可以说 It's nice and cosy.	The bedroom is only big enough for a bed.
My favourite room is the kitchen because I really enjoy cooking for my family and friends.	There's not enough storage space (149 47

💶 Day 7.

Buildings 住所, 博物馆, 图书馆, 老建筑 Museums 博物馆

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Good museums are both <u>informative</u> (信息 量很大的) and <u>entertaining</u> (很有娱乐性 的). Visitors can <u>gain new knowledge</u> (获 取新知识) and have fun at the same time.	Some museums focus too much on making a profit (营利).
Visiting museums is a good way to expand our horizons (开阔眼界).	Some museums don't provide hands-on activities (可以实际动手操作的活动).
★ Some museums provide free admission (提供免费参观).	Most museums charge admission fees (收 取参观费).
★ Popular museums can contribute for tourism (为旅游业做贡献).	Local visitors have already paid money to the museums through the tax system. They should get free admission (获得免 费参观).
★ This museum has a large collection (大量的馆藏) of interesting objects.	Many museums tack funding (缺乏资金).
It provides a wide variety of exhibitions (展览).	Some museums are boring and don't attract many visitors .
History museums bring history to life (让 历史变得鲜明生动).	如果是科技博物馆,那就可以说 It brings science and technology to life ·

Pat 指南 / 亡う

☆ 英美最常见的博物馆类型有: history museum (历史博物馆), natural history museum (自然史博物馆,里面有很多的 fossils), science and technology museums (科技博 物馆), space museums (航天博物馆), art gallery (艺术博物馆,例如伦敦的 the National Gallery), children's museums (儿童博物馆), wax museum (蜡像馆) 和 military museum (军事博物馆) Keep it natural.

Buildings 住所,博物馆,图书馆,老建筑 图书馆 Libraries

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Public libraries are a good source of information (信息来源).	Many public libraries lack funding (缺乏资金).
 ★ This library provides a friendly atmosphere (友好的氛围). ♦ a quiet atmosphere 安静的氛围 	I only go there before exams.
★ It has a large collection (大量的馆藏) of books and magazines.	It only has a small collection of English books.
It also has an area with large tables for group discussions (小组讨论).	The librarians (图书管理员) are not very helpful.
The library has a computer lab (计算机 房) where users can search for informa- tion on the Internet. 6 一个设备齐全的图书馆叫作 a well- equipped library	The Internet connection is too slow. The Wi-Fi bardly works (几乎不能用).

Buildings 住所,博物馆,图书馆,老建筑 Old Buildings 老建筑

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Old buildings show us how people lived or worked in the past.	
任何历史悠久的建筑都可以称为 old building,但是只有曾经有过重要历史意 义的老建筑才可以叫 historic building	★ New buildings can better meet our needs(更好地满足我们的需要).

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
 ★ Historic buildings are an important part of our cultural heritage (文化遗产). ♦ heritage 不能加s, historic site 历史遗址 	Some of them are unsafe (不安全的).
They make cities more attractive (更吸引 人的).	★ They need regular repairs (定期的维修).
★ Historic buildings can attract many tourists (吸引很多的游客) and contrib- ute to the local economy (为当地的经济 做贡献).	Repairing them is very expensive.
Topic Sports & Outdoor Activitie	S
15 运动和户外活动	THE REPORT
15 运动和户外活动 FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
15 运动和户外活动	THE REPORT
15 运动和户外活动 FOR (正方) ★ Sports are fun and enjoyable (有趣而	AGAINST (反方) Many people sum the Internet or watch TV to relax. ● "上网"也有很多 native speakers 用
 ▲ Sports are fun and enjoyable (有趣而 且令人愉快的). Playing badminton (打羽毛球) is a good way to keep fit and have fun at the same 	AGAINST (反方) Many people sum the Internet or watch TV to relax. 管"上网"也有很多 native speakers 用 browse the Web 这个短语 Many children spend too much time in front of a computer or TV screen (屏幕). They

💶 Day 7_

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Playing sports is a good way to make new friends (结识新朋友的好方法).	Many people prefer to make friends online (在网上交友).
Parents should encourage their children to have an active lifestyle (经常运动锻炼 的生活方式). ◆ more energetic 更有活力的	Governments have not done enough to promote healthy lifestyles (促进健康的生 活方式). • exercise regularly 经常锻炼, have a healthy diet 保持健康的饮食结构
★ Team sports (团队运动), such as football, basketball and volleyball (排 球), can help us develop our teamwork skills (团队合作的能力) and communication skills (沟通能力).	Individual sports (个人运动), such as jogging (慢跑), swimming and skiing (滑雪), can boost our concentration and self-discipline (提高我们的注意力和自制力).
Extreme sports, such as bungee jumping (蹦极), rock climbing (攀岩) and rafting (漂流), can give people a great sense of achievement (极大的成就感).	They are very challenging (很有挑战的) and can be cangerous (危险的).
Televised (电视播放的) sports events attract many viewers (吸引很多观众). 意看电视的人叫 TV viewers,而去现场 看体育比赛的人叫 spectators	Some sports stars earn too much money .
Professional athletes (职业运动员) need many years of training (训练) to develop the skills that lead to success in their sports.	We should value scientists, teachers and nurses more highly because they contrib- ute more to society. ◆ value 当动词时是"重视、珍视"的 意思



Pat指南 CD

☆ 关于运动,您如果能再记住这三个名词就更好了: strength (力量), speed (速度) 和 endurance (耐力)

Sports & Outdoor Activities 运动和户外活动 户外活动 Outdoor Activities

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Outdoor activities, such as hiking (徒步 旅行,远足), camping (宿营) and fishing (钓鱼), help us get closer to nature (更加接近大自然).	Outdoor activities depend on (取决于) weather conditions.
\star I can enjoy the sun and fresh air.	Sometimes I have to change my plan because of bad weather.
 ★ Outdoor activities help me recharge my batteries. ● 在英文口语里说 recharge my batteries "给自己充电"的意思是"让身心恢复良好的状态",它跟"周末上补习班"完全无关 ☺ 	Outdoor activities can be very tiring (让 人疲惫的).
Doing outdoor activities as a family is a good way to strengthen family ties (增进亲情).	Many parents find it hard to keep a work- family balance (保持工作和家庭之间的合 理平衡).
★ Outdoor activities can help children leam about nature (了解大自然).	These days, many children spend too much time in front of a computer or TV screen.
★ I feel fresh and energetic when I'm outdoors. ◆ feel fresh and energetic 感觉很有活力	Some outdoor activities, like rock climb ing(攀岩) and rafting (漂流), are very challenging (有挑战的) and can be dangerous.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Outdoor activities can boost our immune system (增强我们的免疫机能).	We may get wet in the rain and catch a cold (感冒).
Cycling is a good way to keep fit.	I would have to share the road with cars and buses.
Bicycles don't need fuel (燃料).	I don't feel safe cycling in busy areas.
Bicycles don't pollute the air (不污染空 气). They're very eco-friendly . (自行车 的更多好处请看 p. 257)	I would have to breathe in (吸入) lots of car fumes (汽车尾气).

Pat 指南 (工)

- ☆ 中外小朋友都喜欢的3 种户外活动:
 - kite-flying (放风筝), the and-seek (捉迷藏), tag (基本就等于国内小朋友们玩的 "捉人")
- ☆ native speakers 谈论户外活动时特别爱说的一句话是 I can soak up some vitamin D (吸收一些维生素 D).因为据说阳光可以促进皮肤生成维生素 D 😳 AFIEL TS TEL



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Travelling helps me get away from it all (摆脱日常的各种琐事).	Travelling abroad is expensive.
★ We can explore (探索) new places and meet new people.	Many tourists don't have the opportunity (机会) to talk with the locals (当地人).
● 英文里的 new people 可不是"刚结婚的人",而是指"以前不认识的人,新认识的人"	③跟团旅行叫 group tour 或者 guided tour,自助游叫作 independent travel

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Travelling alone gives me more freedom (给我更多的自由). I can have more flexible (更灵活的) travel plans.	Travelling alone can be boring .
Travelling with friends is more fun than travelling alone.	Sometimes we argue (争论) about what to do.
★ Travelling with friends is a good way to strengthen friendships (增进友情). ● 增进亲情是 strengthen family ties	My friends are always too busy to travel.
We can share the experience together.	We spend too much time talking to each other.
★ Tourism contributes to (做贡献) the economy.	Tourism may damage the environment (破坏环境)
Tourists spend money on hotels, transport, food, entertainment and souvenirs (旅行纪念品).	Some tourists don't respect (尊重) the local traditions (当地的传统).

Pat 指南

💶 Day 7

- ☆ 在英美,年轻人旅行时很爱说的一句话是: I prefer to travel light (轻装旅行,只带很少 的行李).
- ✿ native speakers 在说旅行的好处时经常会用到一个短语叫 recharge my batteries ("给 自己充电")。请注意:这个 phrase 在英文里是指"让疲劳的身心恢复良好的状态", 而不是"周末上补习班" ③

I'm going to spend the weekend on the beach to recharge my batteries.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ It's important to have a healthy and balanced diet (健康的、均衡的饮食结构).	Many people have busy careers and rely on (依赖于) fast food for their meals.
 ★ Fruit and vegetables are rich in (富含) vitamin C and fiber (维生素 C 和 纤维). ● 英文里说水果时还常会用到 juicy (多 汁的) 这个词、"很有营养的"则是very nutritious 	★ Eating too much fast food damages children's health (破坏儿童的健康).
Seafood is high in protein (蛋白质) and low in fat (脂肪).	Fast food contains (含有) too much fat, salt (盐) or sugar (糖).
I like to start my day with a hearty (丰盛 的) breakfast.	I often skip (不吃, "跳过去") breakfast.
I always try to eat three square meals (吃 好三餐,每顿饭都"不对付") a day.	I'm often too busy to cook.
People eat out to socialise (社交). • eat out 在餐馆儿吃,"在外面吃"	Eating out is more expensive than eating at home.

Some restaurants provide a relaxing and comfortable overcrowded and noisy .

♦ relaxing and comfortable 轻松舒适≜ overcrowded and noisy

The food at this restaurant is very well- priced .	Restaurant food tends to be unhealthy (不健康的).
♦ native speakers 经常用 well-priced 来形	♦ high-fat food 高脂肪的食品, high-salt
容餐馆的食品"定价合理的"	food 高含盐量的食品

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Restaurants provide a wide variety of (多 种多样的) food.	Good restaurants are always packed (总 是挤满了人).
 ★ Locally-produced food (本地生产的食品) is more nutritious and tastes better. ♦ more nutritious 更有营养的 	These days, food is often transported (运输) over long distances.
Organic food (有机食品) is produced without chemicals (化学药品).	Organic food is expensive.
Genetically-modified crops (转基因的庄 稼) grow faster. ● 如果觉得太长,就说 GM crops 也同 样地道	Many people don't trust (不信任) GM food.
★ GM food looks more attractive (更吸引人的).	GM food could damage our health (有可 能破坏健康). 世提出假设时, could 语气比 can 更客气

Food & Cooking 饮食和做饭 Cooking 做饭

Day 7

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Cooking is an important life skill(生 活技能).	Many parents don't know how to cook healthy meals.
★ Teaching children cooking skills can make them more independent (让他们 更加独立).	Cooking can be risky (有风险的) for young children.

Keep it natural.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Children who can cook tend to eat less junk food (比较少吃垃圾食品).	Many children are addicted to (对上瘾) junk food.
Cookery classes are fun and helpful (有 趣而且有帮助的). ◆ cookery classes / cookery courses 厨艺课	Parents can teach their children how to cook for free (免费地).
Food is always beautifully cooked on cookery shows (厨艺节目). 章 ★ It's almost like an art form. 简直就 像是一种艺术形式。	I don't really follow the cooking tips from TV chefs · ◆ tips 小窍门,"小贴士", TV chefs 厨艺 节目里面的"大厨",请注意 chef 的正 确读音是/Jef / √,而不是/tfef / X
Pat指南	1试里一个很有用的短语,例如 rely too much

- ☆ rely too much on…"过度依赖……"是口试里一个很有用的短语,例如 rely too much On fast food 和 rely too much on mobile phones
- ☆ 白面包是 white bread, 全麦面包是 whole-wheat bread, 虽然不太好吃, 但是更有营养 (more nutritious)
- ☆ recipe 是指一个菜的做法:

Many people have secret recipes that they don't share with others.

☆ ingredients 是指做菜的"原料"

Fresh ingredients make meals healthier.

☆ native speakers 常用下面这三种说法来形容食物 "好吃的",它们的语气依次增强: tasty (味道不错的) < delicious (非常好吃的) < out of this world (已经不是一般人 类所能吃到的了),您现在应该明白为什么英语里最常用的是 delicious 了 ☺



Day 7.

Colours can affect our mood (影响我们的情绪).

★ Bright colours (鲜艳的颜色), such as orange and red, make me feel energetic (很 有活力的).

★ Dark colours (比较暗的颜色), such as purple and brown, make me feel calm and peaceful (平静安详的).

Soft colours (柔和的颜色), like cream (淡黄色) and grey (灰色), look elegant (优雅的) and classy (很有品位的,很有"格调"的,在地道英文里这个形容词跟上 田天田来注注院 课无关).

Pat指南

☆ 有3 种颜色国内同学们很少会说起,但是却经常被 native speakers 提到。一个是 navy blue (海军蓝),另一个是 maroon (一种比较暗的红色,您肯定听说过 Maroon 5,其 实那个乐队现在已经不止5个人了),第三个是 lilac (淡紫色,在国外有不少喜欢美术 IFIEL TS T 的女生喜欢)

Colours & Numbers 颜色和数字 Numbers & Maths 数字和数学

We think of 6, 8 and 9 as lucky numbers. They sound similar to (相似的) some Chinese characters (中文字, 汉字) with positive meanings (积极的含义).

★ My lucky number is... It's the day I was born on. ☺

Long numbers are difficult to remember.

I try to think of a sentence (想出一个句子) that sounds similar to the number. That can help me remember the number.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Maths skills can help children better manage(管理) their time and money.	Many children find maths difficult (感到 数学很难).
\star Maths skills can help children better understand the world around them.	They think maths is boring. ◆ think in a more logical way (更有逻辑 地思考)
Getting good grades (好成绩) in maths can help children build self-confidence (树立自信心).	★ Learning maths takes a lot of practice (需要很多的练习).
Topic Parks, Plants, Animals & 19 公园, 植物, 动物, FOR (正方)	9类
FOR (正方) ★ Parks are quiet and peaceful (宁静安 详的).	AGAINST (反方) Some parks are noisy and overcrowded (喧闹而且过于拥挤的) at weekends. ● 英国人更常说 at weekends, 美国人则
★ Parks help us reduce stress (减轻压力).	更常说 on weekends There are not enough parks in this city.
This park is a good place to hang out (休闲	● 地道英文里的 new people 跟"刚结婚"没关系,而是指"以前不认识的人, 新认识的人"

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
This park is a great place for having a picnic(野餐) or a relaxing walk.	The picnic tables are wom-out (破旧的).
★ We can get away from busy city life (摆脱繁忙的都市生活) and relax for a couple of hours.	Big cities are concrete jungles. ● 中文里经常把大城市叫作"钢筋水泥的丛林",英文里则把大城市叫作 concrete jungles"混凝土的丛林",有空 的时候您不妨听听 Alicia Keys 版的 Empire State of Mind 来感受一下纽约的 "混凝土丛林" ②
We can enjoy the sun and fresh air (新鲜 的空气).	The park equipment (设备) is old and some has been damaged (被破坏了). • equipment <u>不能</u> 加 s
Cities need more green space (绿化空间).	Very few people are interested in planting trees (种树,植树).
Neighbourhood parks (居民区里的公园) help people develop a sense of community.	Many neighbourhood parks lack funding (缺乏资金).
I like to watch the plants grow. ● 英美人谈论自己的 garden 时经常这 么说	I have to water the plants (给植物浇水) by myself.

Pat指南

____ Day 7_

☆ native speakers 谈到自己喜欢的公园或花园时特别爱说的一句话是 This park / garden is an oasis from city life. oasis 的意思是 "绿洲",请注意听音频里的正确读音

- ☆ 公园里面常见的景物有 flowerbeds(花坛), lawns(绿地), fountains(喷泉), benches(长椅), sculptures(雕塑), gazebos(亭子), paths(公园里的小路), 以及小朋友们玩的 swings(秋千), slides(滑梯), see-saws(跷跷板)等
- ☆ 如果要说公园里"点缀着"一些池塘和湖泊, 地道英文会说 The park is dotted with ponds and lakes.

Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds 公园, 植物, 动物, 鸟类 Plants 植物

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Trees produce oxygen (制造氧气) and absorb carbon dioxide (吸收二氧化碳).	Global warming (全球变暖) is a very serious problem.
★ Trees can help to reduce pollution (滅 少污染) and clean the air (净化空气).	There are more cars on the road, which means more car fumes (汽车尾气) in the air.
★ They provide shade (提供树荫) in the summer.	There are not enough trees in this city.
Trees are the main source of (主要的来 源) wood and contribute to the economy (为经济做贡献).	Millions of trees are cut down each year.
★ Trees make streets more attractive .	Very few people are interested in planting trees (植树) in their neighbourhood (居民区).



IELTS SPEAKING TEST

花的	作用
★ Many plants <mark>bloom</mark> (开花) in the spring.	★ We can enjoy the colours and fragrance (香气) of the flowers.
Many people like to <u>decorate</u> (装饰) their <u>living room</u> (客厅) with <u>fresh</u> flowers (鲜花).	Fresh flowers are more expensive than plastic flowers (塑料花) or silk flowers (丝花).
Fresh flowers are beautiful.	They don't last long (不耐用).
★ Flowers are simple out thoughtful (简单但是很"贴心"的) gifts. ★ They can help us express our feelings (表达我 们的情感).	Flowers can help to cheer up patients (帮助病人振作起来). • native speakers 把送给病人的花叫作
一些花的	象征意义
 ◆ The lotus (莲花) is a symbol of purity ◆ is a symbol of 是的象征 ◆ The red rose (红玫瑰) is a symbol of ◆ The carnation (康乃馨) means love a 	romantic love
	着) wealth and prosperity (财富和兴旺).
♦ The peony (牡丹花) represents (象征	

Pat 指南

☆ 您还可以在 p. 187 页看到很多好记又好说的植物名称

Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds 公园, 植物, 动物, 鸟类 Animals & Birds 动物和鸟类

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I like to hear birds chirping (鸟叫) in the morning.	Wild(野生的) animals are leaving this area because of noise and pollution.
 Birds are an important part of the ecosystem (生态系统). ♦ wild species 野生物种, endangered species 濒危物种 	Not all wild species are protected by law. ◆ are protected by law 受到法律的保护
There used to be (过去曾经有) a wide variety of wild animals and birds living in this area. ◆ protect biodiversity保护生物的多样性	 ★ Now their habitats are being polluted and destroyed. ♦ habitat 栖息地
Governments should spend more money on the protection of wild species.	Many wildlife reserves lack funding (缺乏 资金). wildlife reserves 野生动植物保护区, nature reserves 自然保护区
Some birds have gorgeous feathers (非常 漂亮的羽毛).	Some birds look plain (看起来平淡无奇的).
Some people tend to believe seeing a magpie(喜鹊) brings good luck.	Some people believe seeing a crow (乌 鸦) brings bad luck. ◆ That's just an old superstition (迷信).
★ Pets can help to reduce loneliness (减 少孤独感).	Some pets make a lot of noise.
★ Pets can help children develop a sense of responsibility (责任感).	Some pet owners (宠物的主人) are not responsible owners . They don't take good care of their pets.

Pat指南

☆ native speakers 描述小朋友或者小动物可爱的时候除了用 cute 之外,还经常会用短语 cute and adorable 来说明"可耐"的程度 ☺

💶 Day 7_

Topic Celebration & Rest 20 节日,聚会,礼物,跳舞和睡眠

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Celebrating festivals is fun and enjoyable (有趣而且令人心情愉快的).	Festivals are noisy, but that's part of the fun.
★ Festivals contribute a lot to the economy (为经济做出很大的贡献).	Celebrating festivals can be expensive.
Festivals help to strengthen family ties (增进亲情).	More and more people choose to live alone .
 ★ Family members get together (聚在一起) and share the joy (分享喜说). ♦ catch up on each other's life 聊彼此的近况 	Trains are overcrowded (过于拥挤的), with many passengers (乘客) standing.
Traditional festivals are an important part of our cultural heritage (文化遗产). ♦ heritage <u>不能</u> 加 s	Many young people think Western festivals, like Christmas (圣诞节) and Valentine's Day (靖人节), are more fun and exciting. ◆ Thanksgiving Day 感恩节, pive thanks for what we have 对我们所拥有的表示感谢
★ Traditional festivals help children better understand (更好地理解) their culture.	Traditional festival food tends to be delicious but unhealthy .
On New Year's Eve, many people watch the TV specials . 遭 这里 special 是名词"特别节目"的 意思	"看焰火"叫作 see the fireworks, "放鞭 炮"则叫 set off firecrackers, 给小朋友 红包儿是 give children red envelopes with money inside。如果非要跟考官说"春 晚",下面这个表达会让他/她听得很舒服, 尽管你自己会说得比较累: the TV gala broadcast on the eve of Chinese New Year



native speakers 在新年时特别重视的一件事情是 make a New Year's resolution (做新年决定),通常是决定对自己以前有的某种不良生活方式做出重要的改变。不过,BBC 去年年底做的 survey 显示:只有8%的人能真正坚持自己的新年决定 (Only 8 percent of people stick to their New Year's resolutions.),而高达92%的英国人其实都没实现自己在新年时决定的目标 (92 percent of people fail to achieve their New Year's resolutions.) ☺

Celebration & Rest 节日,聚会,礼物,跳舞和睡眠 Parties 聚会

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Going to parties is a good way to the fun with friends and meet new people. ♦ catch up with old friends 和老朋友 "叙旧", make new friends 结识新朋友	Some parties are too noisy . ◆ play party games 聚会的时候玩游戏
★ People socialise (社交) at parties. ● 英文里把只要一听说有 party 就必去 的人叫作 party animal	Some parties are too wild (疯狂的). Some people even get drunk (喝醉) and do crazy things. I'm shy. I don't feel comfortable (感到 很不自在) at parties.
Most of my friends are very <mark>sociable</mark> (很 外向的,喜欢社交的).	My parents are too strict (过于严厉的). We don't communicate well.

Pat 指南 C D

☆ The more, the merrier. (人越多越好玩儿) 是在英美生活里说准备开 party 时一句



很常用的话, 而 We had a blast (玩得非常开心!)则是开完了 party 之后人们常说的一句话

☆ party 的另一个作用是 celebrate special occasions (庆祝特殊的场合),比如 a friend's birthday, the beginning of a new year, wedding 等

Celebration & Rest 节日,聚会,礼物,跳舞和睡眠 **假期 Holidays**

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Holidays help us take a break , have a good rest (充分地休息) and recharge our batteries (让疲劳的身心恢复良好的状态).	Most shops are overcrowded (过于拥挤 的) on public holidays. 個英美的大多数商店在公共假期时却 会关门 (Most shops are closed on public holidays.)
Many people go abroad on holidays.	Travelling abroad is expensive and can be challenging (有挑战的). ♦ overcome the language barrier 克服语言 障碍

Pat指南 / 二)

☆ 每到假期,很多 native speakers 爱说的两句话是: I use holidays to catch up on sleep (我用假期追回睡眠,也就是中文说的"补觉"☺),和 I can recharge my batteries ("给身心充电",让身心恢复良好的状态)。

☆ 中国的 public holidays (公共假期) 的英文说法:

the New Year holiday, the Spring Festival holiday (也可以说 the Lunar New Year holiday), the Qingming Festival holiday (也可以说 the Tomb Sweeping Day holiday), the Labour Day holiday, the Duanwu Festival holiday (也可以叫 the Dragon Boat Festival holiday), the Mid-Autumn Festival holiday, the National Day holiday

Celebration & Rest 节日, 聚会, 礼物, 跳舞和睡眠 Birthdays 生日

My birthday reminds me (提醒我) of how much my parents love and support me.

★ Celebrating my birthday with friends makes me feel special .

♦ light the candles on the cake 点生日蜡烛, sing "Happy Birthday" 唱 "祝你生日快 乐", make a wish 许愿, blow out the candles 吹蜡烛, cut the cake 切蛋糕, open the gifts 开礼物

I really appreciate how much my friends care about me.

★ They give me thoughtful gifts ("贴心"的礼物), like my favourite snacks, books or gift cards (礼品卡) for my favourite shops.

I particularly like the service (全新的开始)。 Every birthday is a fresh start (全新的开始)。 所有不同的开始)。 I particularly like the gifts hand-man by my friends (我的朋友们亲手制作的礼物).

We can have new dreams (新的梦想) and new goals (新的目标).

We'll try to do things better and achieve more.

★ The 18th birthday is very important because it's when a young person is considered to become an adult (成年人).

Pat 指南 / 工 /)

- ☆ 在生日聚会上, native speakers 常用the birthday boy / the birthday girl 来称呼过生日 的男孩 /女孩
- ☆ "唱卡拉 OK"的英文就叫sing karaoke,请认真听音频(英语里的日文词最后一个字 母 e 通常都是要发音的)

Celebration & Rest 节日, 聚会, 礼物, 跳舞和睡眠 Gifts 礼物

💶 Day 7.

★ My friends and I exchange gifts (交換 礼物) on New Year's Day.	Exchanging gifts is a good way to celebrate special occasions .
I spend a lot of time choosing the right gift for my friends' birthday. ♦ thoughtful gifts "贴心"的礼物	★ Giving friends gifts shows that we really care about them.
On Chinese New Year, children receive gifts and red envelopes with money inside (红包).	On Valentine's Day, lovers give each other romantic gifts, like flowers, chocolate or jewellery (首饰), to express their feelings (表达他们的情感).
Some people give their friends expensive gifts, like mobile phones or tablets (平 板电脑).	Some people give their boss expensive gifts to develop guanxi. ◆ guanxi 其实已经是地道的英文词了, 而且还形成了一个短语 develop guanxi, 也就是"搞关系", 请听音频里这个词的"正确发音" ②
★ Hand-made gifts are more creative (更 有创意的) and more memorable (给人印 象更深的).	 ★ It's the thought that counts. ● 这是 native speakers 说礼物时最常用的句子之一:真正重要的是心意。

英文里常说挑选礼物时3个最重要的考虑因素是: the occasion (场合), the person's interests and hobbies (对方的兴趣爱好) 以及 your budget (你的预算)

Keep it natural

Celebration & Rest 节日,聚会,礼物,跳舞和睡眠 Dancing 跳行

★ Dancing is a good way to socialise (社 交). ♦ go to a dance 参加舞会	 I have two left feet, so I can't dance well. ♦ native speakers 说自己不擅长跳舞时会用"我长了两只左脚"这句话给自己解围 (make it less embarrassing)
★ Dancing is a good way to keep fit . ◆ a good form operative 很好的锻炼形式	Learning to dance well takes time and energy (需要时间和精力).
The moves (动作) and steps (黄步) of traditional dances are more complicated (复杂的). They take a lot of practice to learn. ◆ traditional dances 传统舞蹈, 比如 tango (探戈)	The moves and steps of modern dances are more fun and creative. They are a good way to express ourselves (表达自 ご) modern unces 现代舞蹈, 比如 hip-hop dance (嘻哈舞)
Ballet(芭蕾舞) is an elegant(优雅的) dance style.	I like to dance to energetic (很有活力的) music. ♦ dance to traditional music 随着传统的音 乐跳舞

Pat 指南

- ☆ 国内的一些中年女士 (middle-aged ladies) "跳广场舞"的英文叫 practise their Square Dance routine
- ☆ PSY 的江南 Style (Gangnam Style) 虽然能让人上瘾 (very addictive),但说舞蹈时 您就别说"骑马舞"(horse-riding dance) 了☺

💶 Day 7

Celebration & Rest 节日,聚会,礼物,跳舞和睡眠 Sleeping Habits 睡眠习惯

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I always try to keep a regular sleep schedule (保持有规律的作息时间).	★ If I stay up late (很晚才睡), then I feel tired and find it hard to concentrate (很难集中注意力) the next morning.
★ A good night's sleep (好好地睡一晚) makes me feel fresh and energetic (感觉 很有活力).	Lack of sleep increases the risk of heart disease and high blood pressure (导致患 心脏病和高血压的风险上升).
★ Getting enough sleep helps me reduce stress (减轻压力) and can really boost my efficiency (提高我的效率).	Lack of sleep makes people feel stressed (感觉压力很大).
Listening to some relaxing music, taking a hot shower (洗个热水澡) and doing some light exercise (做轻度的锻炼) can all help me get a good night's sleep.	I often play video games before going to bed.

Pat 指南 / 印

☆ native speakers 把一个爱早起的人叫作 an early bird,而把一个喜欢晚睡,越晚越精神的人称为 a night owl。有趣的是:这个短语和中文里说的"夜猫子"正好是100%的契合度 ☺

对于备考时间有限的同学来说,先集中准备好本次考试最可能出现的题目仍然是您的首要任务(your priority)。您可以在 Pat 博客 blog. sina. com. cn/ieltsguru 上看到本月口语预测的 Part 1 考题,同时结合我们在 Day 2, Day 7 和《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》里讲解的语言点来进行高效的准备。





Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

I want fit into the perfect space To feel natural and safe I have a promise that I have to hold to So I don't care what you assume

IELTS □试 Part 2 真题库索引



Keep it natural.

口语 Part 2 话题指南

宾馆 / 136 购物中心 / 139 理想的住处 / 145 喜欢的房间 / 147 老建筑 / 152 有水的地方 / 134 & 181 游泳的地方 / 134 靠近水的地方 / 134 靠近水的地方 / 181 图书馆 / 154 美术馆 / 150 音乐厅 / 309 建筑师 / 156 小商店 / 129

в

运动员 / 162 & 164 健身俱乐部 / 163 成功的小生意 / 142 大公司 / 144 音乐人 / 165 乐队 / 167 影星 / 168 艺术家 / 169 有创意的人 / 156, 165 & 171 企业家/ 171 领导人物 / 171 家庭成员 / 173 & 177 教师 / 173 帮助你学习的人 / 176 影响你的人 / 308 学校的规定 / 131 好的法律 / 291 理想的工作 / 176 高收入的工作 / 176 老人 / 177 & 309 孩子 / 177

С

公园 / 184 花园 / 186 安静的地方 / 149, 152, 154 & 186 散步 / 181 & 186 旅行 / 181 野生动物 / 188 & 190 宠物 / 191 植物 / 193

D

童年游戏 / 198 有趣的新闻 / 202 电视节目 / 205 & 208 广播节目 / 207 问答节目 / 206 才艺节目 / 208

125

🚺 Day 8

电视系列剧 / 209 & 212 电影 / 214 & 216 喜欢的歌曲 / 219 广告 / 221 童年故事 / 226 爱读的书 / 173 网站 / 223 外国文化 / 228 喜欢的运动 / 200 极限运动 / 201 绘画 / 233 雕塑 / 231 历史事件 / 286

Е

F

汽车 / 236 & 237 电子产品 / 242 & 245 贵重的东西 / 242 & 245 照片 / 247 信件 / 250 手工制作 / 250 玩具 / 253 服装 / 254 首饰 / 256 重要的发明 / 257

别人祝贺你的事 / 260 & 269 体育事件 / 266 体育赛事 / 269 有趣的科学课 / 272 成功完成的事 / 128 & 269 演讲 / 269 表演 / 275 听音乐的场合 / 275 获得免费物品的场合 / 207 婚礼 / 281 节日 / 284 需要早到的场合 / 260 一个积极的变化 / 293 迟到的经历 / 289 交通堵塞 / 289 去拥挤的地方的经历 / 275 购物经历 / 262 不能用手机的场合7260 听到噪音的经历 / 264 让你气愤的事 / 262 & 264 必须耐心等待的经历 / 262 第一次品尝某种食品 / 287 野餐 / 194 特殊的饭 / 194

吃外国食品的经历 / 287 聚会 / 278

生日/278

特殊的蛋糕 / 283

开心的事 / 260 & 269

对于考试当月最新出现的话题,您还可以在 Pat 的博客 blog. sina. com. cn/ieltsguru 的本月口语预测里看到。

ŊPart 2 的一分钟思考时间里你应该做的事

好消息是: 在 Part 2 考官将会给你纸和笔(如果他/她居然很不敬业地忘了,请你说 Could I have a pen and a sheet of paper?)。在1分钟的思考时间里,考官是允许你在纸 上写 notes 的。

☆ 卡片题必须注意时态,如果说过去的内容,一定一定要记得用过去时。

如果看到题目要求描述过去的事件或者经历,在思考的一分钟里你可以在纸上 写上-ed 这个符号提示自己,以确保开始描述时不会忘记时态。

☆ 名词的复数和谓语动词的单数一定不能忘记加-s。

你也可以在纸上写一个"大S"来提示自己不要说错单复数。

☆ 在纸上记录你想到前 ideas 和 key words 时,字可以写得大一点。

在这方面考官完全管不着你,但是如果你在描述时因为看不清自己在纸上写的 ideas 和 key words 而一再地停下来,把口语考试变成了"阅读"考试,就很可能 会导致悲剧。

一作为 Native speakers,考官们喜欢什么样的答案?

对于大多数中国考生来说,口语卡片题是 IELTS 口试里最"凶险"的一关,因为 Part 2是"独白",一旦开始描述,全程都要自己说,而且还必须面向考官,不能扭着脸 儿说。

让问题变得更复杂的是:中国考生和 IELTS 考官对于 Part 2 答案的"审美观"也是 不同的。考生往往希望用高难度的单词和长句把自己的答案变成有震撼力的"大杀器", 但却并不重视怎样把话题真正描述清楚。但考官作为 native speakers,却更看重描述 (description)的清晰度。所以,当考官听完考生的"趴吐"之后对于描述对象往往仍然 是"一头雾水"。
₋₀ Day 8

IELTS 考官们真正希望听到的 Part 2 答案到底有多难? 我们来看看由主办方 British Council 提供的高分答案实例就真相大白了:

Describe a time when you had to work very hard to achieve a goal.

You should say:

what the goal was

when this happened

what you did to achieve the goal

and talk about why the goal was important to you.

British Council 提供的真实高分答案官方范例:

One of my recent goals was to go on a 4-day walk in the mountains in the South Island.

It's a famous walk in my country, a beautiful walk around some bays by the ocean. We planned to stay at hotels each night, so it was going to be a great holiday for my husband and me. But I needed to get menough to enjoy it.

I did lots of exercise and training to prepare for this goal. When I started, I knew I needed to get a lot fitter, so I did a lot of walking. At first, the 8 km circle route near my house was really hard for me. It took about 2 hours. But in the end I could do it easily in a much shorter time.

I also went for longer walks with my husband on weekends. We used to walk to the Botanical Garden, which was a long way. But we got to have lunch in a café when we got there. That was fun, and I found that I had more energy as I got fitter. But then my feet and legs started to hurt, so I went to swimming classes three times a week. I had to get up at 6 am for this, but it was worth it, and it really improved my balance.

This goal was important to me because I really wanted to go on this holiday with my husband. Reaching it also gave me a great sense of achievement. I was very proud of myself. And of course I was a lot fitter by the end of the training.

128

没有"卖弄"的痕迹,也毫无"炫技"的影子,除了少数略有难度的词汇和短语之 外,90%的用词都是同学们几乎不屑一用的"基础词汇"。但是这位考生确实得到了 British Council 给出的高分,原因很简单:因为她的描述(description)清晰、扣题、自 然。

事实上,你在口语 Part 2 里需要做的既不是安于"眼前的苟且",也不是追求 "诗和远方", speaking examiner 在 Part 2 里真正希望听到你说的是:

- 01 一个清晰的答案,也就是通过你的英语描述考官可以比较容易地听明白你描述的人物、事物或者事件是"什么样儿的";
- O2 一个扣题的答案,也就是你应该积极地参考卡片上面列出的四个提示问题 (cue questions),同时你还可以在四个提示里面选择1~2个自己"最有 感觉"的提示重点展开,并适当给出合理的细节(例如:上面这个 British Council 给出的官方实例选择了对第1个和第2个提示问题只是简要地一带 而过,而对第3个和第4个提示问题进行深入的展开,并适当给出了合理 的细节)。Pat 还将会为您列出的 Mind Maps (思维导图) 也是 native speakers 进行描述 (description)的时候确保和题、充实的常用工具;

03 一个自然的答案,你可以在考前针对每类话题准备一些相关词汇和短语, 但请牢记:只有你能够自然地说出来的词汇和短语才是真正适合你自己的, 会让你"卡壳儿"的难词在考场实战里只会成为你的负担。

我们再来看一个 Cambridge English Language Assessment 的官方卡片题实例:

Describe a shop near where you live that you sometimes use.

You should say:

where it is

what the shop looks like

what sorts of product or service it sells

and explain why you use this shop.



高分答案实例:

I'm going to describe a convenience store in my neighbourhood.

The store is on the south side of an old brick building. The store has large windows, and there's a sign with the name of the store, Kevin's Convenience, on top of the front entrance. There're three parking spots at the front of the store.

The store is small, but it offers a wide variety of goods, from snacks to magazines to birthday cards. It even has some stuff that I can't find in bigger stores, like baked sweet potatoes.

The owners of this store are a middle-aged couple. The store is small but tidy, with friendly and helpful employees. The shelves are always clean and well organised, and the prices are quite reasonable.

I often buy things from this store because it's just a 2-minute walk from my flat, so it's really convenient for me to get to. I often shop there also because it's open 24 hours a day, all year round, and the service is always good.

这个高分实例同样也很简单,但它清晰、扣题、自然,并且有合理的细节,完全体现 了主办方对于 Part 2 高分答案的真实要求。

我们再来看一个被很多考生认为比较"变态"的卡片题是不是也可以有"不变态" 的高分答案:

> Describe a rule in your school (that you agree or disagree with). You should say: what the rule was whether you followed it whether your classmates followed it and explain why you think it was good (or bad).

学校规定? 这道题让很多"烤鸭"还没出国就已经明显感到了国外和国内教育的不同: 国内考试通常并不鼓励考生对学校教育"吐槽",如果"吐"得太狠还可能遭到高考作文 零分之类的重罚。但这道卡片题却明明白白地告诉你:不管是你赞同的还是反对的,只要 是一条学校的规定你就可以放心地说。

高分答案实例:

I'm going to talk about the "hands-up" rule in the high school I attended. We were asked to put our hands up in class to answer questions.

I always followed this rule. But sometimes when I was chosen by the teacher to answer a question, I couldn't remember what I wanted to say. That was a bit embarrassing.

This rule made us feel we could make our own choice to answer a question or not. And we were encouraged to put our ideas forward in a polite way instead of talking over each other. We put up our hands only when we had an answer ready, so the rule also helped as gain confidence.

But some of my classmates were too shy to put up their hands. They were afraid they would get the answer wrong and get laughed at. And some teachers always picked the same people to answer their questions.

Anyway, I think this rule helped us a lot. Without it, we would have just shouted out our answers and ended up learning nothing at all.

显然,虽然话题比较"变态",但考官还是更愿意接受一个"不变态"、清晰、自然, 并且有合理细节的答案。

Pat指南

本章的真题请您充分结合 Pat 在博客里贴出的本月预测来准备,提前想一想每个话题的思路、关键词和短语即可,而且同类话题的答案完全可以自然合并 (p. 28),把所有卡片题库在考前全都看一遍既没有可能、也没有必要。

💶 Day 8

▲ A 建筑

Pat 解题 Pat's Thought

建筑师 (architects) 在西方社会里的地位从历 史上到今天一直是比较高的,比如 Frank Gehry 就是 其中的一个,右面这张照片是 Pat 本人在世界顶级的 MIT 校园拍摄的 Frank Gehry 作品,够另类 (funky) 的吧?

关于建筑,有两个单词中国同学们经常会用混: 即 building 和 architecture。building 是可数名词,指 的是一栋一栋的房子,而 architecture 是不可数名词, 它其实是一个地区或者一种风格的所有建筑的总称, 而不是特指一栋具体的房子。



关于 城市,也有两个词经常被中国同学们用混:即 city 和 urban。其实 urban 不是 名词"城市",而是形容词"城市的",如果想用 urban 表示城市,就一定要说 the urban area。

本类话题最有代表性的方向 Typical Topics

- * Describe an old building.
- Describe a house you like.
- * Describe a place that makes you feel relaxed.
- * Describe a tourist attraction.
- * Describe an educational trip.

展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Maps

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案,那么下面的 思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



您无需记忆 Part 2 的任何一个答案,但你应该认真思考高分答案是怎样用简单、 自然的英文进行扣题、清晰的描述(description),并适当给出细节的。请坚信:练 出<mark>扣题、清晰的描述能力</mark>其实要比机械记忆答案更容易、也更有意义。

💶 Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

分级演示 Sample Answers

☆ 一个有水的地方

Pat 指南 / C

我们在本节里都是讨论人工的地方,如果您想描述自然界里有水的地方,还可以参考 C类话题里的第1,2题。



难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about our community swimming pool. It's located behind our community center. The pool is not very big, but is clean and well-managed.

Lots of people go there on hot summer days. Some people just go there to hang out and cool off. Others go there to exercise and get in shape. Those who're good at swimming tend to stay in the deep end.

The shallow end is often packed with children who just splash water around and have fun. Sometimes there're also instructors giving them swimming lessons. Enjoying the sun and getting



≫ 扫描二维码就可以听到本节的原音朗读,您还可以使用本书附赠的音频卡听到更多章节的录音

paid is a pretty good deal, huh?

I usually go to the pool a couple of times a week in the summer. Swimming is a really good way to relax and keep fit at the same time. And it's always fun to meet and chat with other people who also enjoy swimming. I've made lots of new friends there.

And... I don't have a girlfriend (for girls: boyfriend). So who knows? Maybe I could meet someone special there.

加分词汇和短语的作用只是"点缀"你的答案,而不是"充斥"你的答案。 在真实的 British Council 官方高分范例里面,多数内容其实都是用浅显易懂的词汇 表达的,也只有这样的描述(description)才能真正听起来清晰、自然。

THE A		
轮到你了大孩子	lt's	Your Turn.
► Word Bank on This Topic		
社区中心 community center	管理得很好的 well-managed	
休闲放松 hang out	感觉更凉爽,给身体"降温" cool	off
深水区 the deep end	浅水区 the shallow end	
挤满了 is packed with	溅起水花儿 splash water around	
游泳教练 swimming instructor	几次 a couple of times	
保持体格强健 keep fit	聊天 chat	
0 扩展词汇		
减轻压力,"减压" reduce stress	社交 socialise	
减肥 lose weight	增强肌肉 build muscles	
室外泳池 outdoor swimming pool	室内泳池 indoor swimming pool	
温水 warm water	冷水 cold water	请参考Pat的思路
很清澈的 crystal-clear	泳道 lanes	,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
泳镜 goggles	蛙泳 breast-stroke	的单词, 思考
仰泳 back-stroke	蝶泳 butterfly-stroke	如果是您将会怎么说

自由泳 freestyle	热身运动 warm-up exercises	
k性很好 swim like a fish		
切底不会游泳,"游得像砖头一样"	swim like a brick	
初学者 beginners	狗刨 doggy-paddle	
效生员 lifeguard	男式游泳裤 swim trunks	
女式游泳衣 swimsuit / bikini 此外,备考时间充裕的同学还可 Centre 是什么样的: www.londonag	以从这个网站了解伦敦的 Aquatics uaticscentre. org	请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

上面这个工具箱里的词都挺不错的,但也没必要全搬。可下面的这个词要是考 到这个话题您还存着不用那就是"一不说成千古恨"的结果—— spot。这个名词在英 文口语里经常用来表示"地点"。例如:

[剑桥例句] This park looks like a nice spot for a picnic.

相应地,下次说到"有水的地方",您就可以理直气壮地对考官说. It's a nice spot for swimming and playing water games.

☆ 一个现代建筑

(A) 宾 馆



building

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I stayed at the Yong-Fan Hotel while visiting Shanghai last July.

It's located at the southeast corner of the city and is well-known for its guests. I was told many celebrities stayed there before, like Daniel Wu and Stephen Chow.



The hotel really provides comfort and convenience. The room I stayed in was very spaces. The bed was nice and comfortable. The TV had many channels, and the air conditions was quiet and easy to control.

The hotel has a wide variety of rooms, from single rooms equipped with coffee maker and fridge to Presidential Suites which are on the top floor. All rooms have free Wi-Fi.



The hotel employees were friendly and helpful, and the room prices were very reasonable for the area. I really enjoyed my stay there.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Word Bank on This Topic			
住宾馆 stay at a hotel (地	道英文里"住宾馆"的动词不能用 live	*)	
著名的 well-known	名人 celebrities		
吴彦祖 Daniel Wu	周星驰 Stephen Chow	(The particular of the	
舒适与方便(名词短语)	omfort and convenience	0	
舒适方便的 (形容词短语)	comfortable and convenient	请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴	
宽敞的 spacious	空调 air-conditioning	, 7近3佰查 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考	
咖啡机 coffee maker	电冰箱 fridge	的平间, 忠考 如果是您将会 怎么说	



Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果要用英语说"宾馆的服务设施",基础不错的同学可能会想到 hotel facilities。 但在地道英文里还有个更地道的 hotel amenities 才是表达这个意思的最佳选择:

[剑桥例句] The hotel has a wide variety of amenities, such as a swimming pool, restaurants and a fitness center.

Time to Branch Out.

推而广之

Describe a modern building in your city.

N eep it natural.	
补充弹药	
office building 写字楼	
high-rise building 高层建筑	2
energy-efficient 节能的	Extra
well laid-out 布局合理的	Extra Amm

(B) 购物中心



难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

72

My favourite shopping center is Oriental Plaza. It's just a short walk from Tian'an Men Square.

The center is pretty big, and it's wrapped in glass on all sides.

The inside of the building is amazing: very spacious, clean and well-organised --not like many other shopping centers where you can easily get lost.

This shopping center is a landmark in Beijing, not just because of it's size and



建筑

- Day 8

location, but also because of the enjoyable shopping experience it provides.

My friends and I like this shopping center because it has a wide variety of shops, and all the stuff they sell is good-quality and well-priced. And the service is good too. The shop assistants are always friendly and helpful.

The center also has a large food court, with lots of food choices, from traditional food to Western food.

轮到你了	It's	Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank		
离走一小段路就到了 is just a sho	rt walk from	
(建筑)外表面都是玻璃的 is wrapped	in glass	
(建筑) 内部 the inside hty interior		
非常好的 amazing	宽敞的 spacious	
井然有序的 well-organised	标志性建筑(landmark)。	
令人愉快的购物体验 enjoyable shopp	ing experies	
优质的 good-quality	定价合理的 we sed	
售货员 shop assistants	友好的而且很有帮助的	and helpful
购物中心的美食街 food court		「 教
② 扩展词汇		
位置极佳的 is well-located	巨大的 huge / enormous	
······层高的建筑 a storey building	顶级的 top-notch	
顾客 customers	问候某人 greet sb.	
优惠券 coupon	电梯 lift (BrE) / elevator (Am	
扶梯 escalators	灯光,照明 lighting	请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴
壮观的 spectacular	装饰 decorations	这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
很有品位的 classy	全额退款 full refund	如果是您将会怎么说

building

Keep it natural.

口碑很好 has a good reputation 精品服饰店 boutiques 化妆品专柜 cosmetics section 打折,促销 sales / special offers 花店 florist's shop 面包房 bakery 电影院 cinema (BrE) / movie theater (AmE) 美食街 food court 收据 receipt (这个单词里的字母 p 不发音) 建筑的内部布局很方便使用。 The layout of the building is easy to follow. 时间充裕的同学还可以在去英国之前就先逛逛伦敦著名的 Westfield ②: uk westeld com/london

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

只是在店里"浏览商品" (但不见得买) 的英文表达是: browse through the shops, 而如果只想在商场里随便逛逛放松一下, 甚至都不一定会看商品, 那就是 #STEL TST hang out in the shopping center 7.

Time to Branch Out.

推而广之

Describe a famous building in your city.

补充弹药

has attracted many tourists 吸引了很多的游客

celebrity 名人

is always packed 总是挤满了人的

Extra Amn



(C) 餐 馆

Describe a restaurant you like.

You should say:

where it is

what type of food it serves

who you go to the restaurant with

and explain why you like this restaurant.

Pat 指南

英文里面有两句著名的谚语叫"Small is beautiful."和"Less is more."——"小 就是美,少即是多",我们来看看怎样用简单、自然的英文清晰地描述一个小餐馆。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a Chinese restaurant on Nan Hu Street. I'm a regular there.

The restaurant is easy to find because it's next to a hotel. It's quite small and can only hold about 20 people. But the tables are neatly set and the



seats are comfortable. The décor is simple but attractive with some nice paintings on the wall.

I've taken lots of friends there. Their menu has a wide variety of Chinese food, from shrimp dumplings to spring rolls to roasted ribs, so there's something for everyone. The food is always freshly prepared and tasty. The portions are quite large, too.

I like this restaurant also because the service is quick, friendly and helpful. My friends and I usually go there for dinner. It is always packed when we're there, but

building

we have never felt rushed by the staff.

This restaurant is small but has a cosy atmosphere, and it is very well managed. It proves "Small is beautiful."





Pat 的海外生活英语实录

small business 的特点就是老板通常都是"白手起家"的。要表示"一个白 手起家的创业者",除了有个很地道但是比较难的英文词 entrepreneur,还有 a self-made man / a self-made woman 这样既很好理解而且也容易在口试时说出 来的短语。

< Day 8

(D)别 墅

Describe your idea of an ideal house (理想的别墅).

You should say:

what kind of house it would be

why you would like to live there

what special features it would have

and explain whether you think you will ever live in a house like this.



Pat指南

这个卡片题要求你谈的是"理想的别墅",所以您可以向考官尽情地展示你会用虚拟 语气这种貌似高深、其实没什么的句式 ©

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

My ideal house would be just an average house, nothing too fancy.

It would be close to public transport, have two or three comfortable bedrooms, a spacious living room, a nice kitchen, some bathrooms and a garage. Most importantly, it must have a



garden. I would love the feeling of watching my plants grow.

There should be plenty of appliances in the kitchen, like a gas stove, a fridge and a dishwasher. Beside the kitchen there would be a dining area, with a dining table and some chairs.

The living room must have large windows, a sofa, a coffee table and a flatscreen TV.



What else? Oh, the bathrooms! There must be a bathtub so I could relax in warm water after a busy day. The garage would be for my car, bicycle and tools.

Such a house would cost like 10 million *yuan* in a city like Beijing or Shanghai. So I guess it's nothing more than just a dream for me...



Keep it natural.



Pat 的海外生活英语实录

地板上的大地毯叫 carpei, 小方毯叫 rug, 床上盖的毛毯叫 blacket, 但墙上挂的 挂毯 native speakers 叫什么呢? 跟考官说 a tapestry/'tapistri/, 他/她就会对你刮目 相看 (He / She will be amazed.)。

[剑桥例句] It was hard to hang the tapestry on this curved wall.

(E) 最喜欢的房间

Describe your favourite room in your house / flat.

You should say:

where you live

which room it is

what it is like

and explain why you like this room.

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

Day 8

I live on the fifth floor of an eight-storey building. My favourite room in my flat is the bedroom.

It's not big, just around 10 square meters. There's a single bed in the corner, not big either but very comfortable. There's a table right beside the bed, with a lamp and a vase of flowers. The table is brand-new. I bought it last week.



There's a wardrobe next to the table. Heep all my favourite clothes in it. There's also a desk with a chair in

front of it. My favourite part of the room is the potted part of the desk. It looks gorgeous and smells good, too. The walls are light blue, just like the sky on a sunny day.

It's my favourite room because it's my own personal space where I can really enjoy privacy and comfort. Sometimes I even spend the whole weekend daydreaming there. I like my bedroom also because I decorated it all by myself.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
一幢层高的建筑 astorey building	平方米 square meter
就在旁边 is right beside	一瓶花 a vase of flowers
崭新的 brand-new	衣橱 wardrobe

Keep it natural.

紧挨着 next to	盆栽的植物 potted plant	107 731
非常漂亮的 gorgeous	我自己的个人空间 my own personal s	space
装饰 decorate		and a
2 扩展词汇		
客厅 living room	(家人们) 聚到一起 get together	1.1.1.1
看电视 watch TV	招待客人 entertain our guests	
餐厅 dining room		
	amily , when co. uk/home/dgiped/kw/236 这 方的 Rooms 可以看到各种房间名称),	
	Strs >	

(F) 博物馆

Describe a museum. You should say: what kind of museum it is where it is what it is like and explain whether you like it or not.

Day 8

Pat 指南

Part 2 里还有一道卡片题是 **Describe an art gallery**. 如果准备一个现代艺术馆,就能把这两道题一起准备好了。

很多同学觉得像这样的话题只有艺术系的学生才能说好,但 IELTS 口试的出题原则之 一就是不考查专业知识(The test does not require specialised knowledge.)。考官需要 你说的只是一个扣题、清晰、英文自然的答案。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'd like to talk about my favourite museum — the Modern Art Museum in... (put the city's name here)

The museum is near the city center, and is close to public transport. It's a large building and looks very modern, with lots of steel and glass.

The inside of the building is very **spacious**. Its divided into different sections, like the Asian Art section, the European Art section and the North American Art section. The museum also provides a wide variety of art activities for children, so it's good for all ages.

I like this museum because it has a large collection of modern works of art, and it always has some interesting exhibitions going on. For example, last week it held an exhibition of works by some French artists, which attracted a lot of visitors.

And unlike many other museums, the staff there encourage visitors to take nonflash pictures. This makes the museum even more fun.

My favourite part of the museum is the sculpture garden where there are always hundreds of sculptures on display.

The **admission fee** to the museum is 20 yuan for adults and 5 yuan for children. I think it's pretty **reasonable**.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
公共交通 public transport	
钢和玻璃 steel and glass (地道英	文常用这个短语来泛指现代建筑的材料)
石头和木头 stone and wood (地道	(英文常用这个短语来泛指历史建筑的材料)
宽敞的 spacious	井井有条的 is well-organised
布局合理的 is well laid-out	被分成 is divided into
部分 section	艺术活动 art activities
	for all ages(是的,出国以后您就会发现 native 表达这个意思最自然的方式就是这么浅显易懂)
大量的馆藏 a large collection of	艺术品 works of art
展览 exhibition	吸引 attract
拍摄不用闪光灯的照片 take nov-	ash pictures
雕塑 sculpture	展出 on display
参观费 admission fee	合理的「seconable
し 扩展词 に	展出 on display 合理的 seconable
迷人的 fascinating	展品 exhibit
构图 composition	色彩的搭配 colour scheme 请参考Pat的思
笔触 strokes	人像画 portrait ,并适当借 这个词汇表
风景画 landscape painting	静物画 still life 如果是您将
娱乐性很强的 entertaining	信息量很大的 informative 怎么说
在漫步 wander around	

在 Part 2 描述好一个现代艺术馆只要英文自然、思路清晰就已经很好了。但如果 你真的对 modern art 有兴趣,英国著名的 Tate Modern 官方网站 www. tate. org. uk/ visit/tate-modern 会让你明白什么是 fun and enjoyable ☺

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

美术馆里照在艺术品上面的光线一般不是天然光线,所以不可以叫 sun,而是要 叫作 lighting (照明)。

☆ 一个历史建筑

寺 庙

难度指数:★★★★☆



I'm going to talk about a temple in my hometown.

The temple dates back to the 15th century. Today, lots of people still go there to pray for good luck and good health. Interestingly, although it's a holy place, it's located on the busiest street in my hometown

But from the moment you enter the temple, you start to feel calm and peaceful. Like most historic buildings in the area, the temple faces south, and the front gate is guarded by two stone lions. As you enter the front hall, you'll see four wood sculptures, which are called "the Four Heavenly Kings".

The Great Hall is separated from the front hall with a courtyard where you can see lots of trees and plants. The roof of the Great Hall is supported by tall, thick columns. Inside the Great Hall, you can see a Buddha statue and the statues of some of his students. On the east and west walls of the Great Hall, you can also find some Buddhist works of art.



This temple is not only a holy place. It also attracts thousands of tourists each year. And it provides cultural activities as well, including traditional art classes. So besides being a place of worship, it's also educational and fun.



building

轮到你了	lt's	Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	Contraction of the second	
它的历史可以追溯到 It dates back to		1.1
[剑桥例句] This building dates back to th	e 17th century.	
神圣的地方 a holy place	祈祷 pray	
平静安详的 calm and peaceful	用守护 is guarded by	
雕塑 sculpture	雕像 statue	
与隔开 is separated from	庭院 courtyard	
屋顶 roof	柱子 column	
佛祖 Bucang	艺术品 works of art	
从事宗教活动的场所, place of worship	文化活动 cultural activities	
很有知识性而且又很有趣的 Succational a	ind fun	请参考Pat的思路
佛教徒 Buddhist		,并适当借鉴
佛教徒 Buddhist		这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
巨大的 enormous	塔 patrone	如果是您将会怎么说
许愿 make a wish	烧香 burn incerse sticks	
标志性建筑 landmark	重要的历史遗址 historic sit	e
······的故居 the historic residence of	裂缝 cracks	er por é
(对历史建筑进行的)翻新 renovation	状况完好的 in good condit	ion
中间有庭院的住宅,例如"四合院儿"。	ourtyard house(庭院就叫作 c	ourtyard)
优雅的 elegant 私密的	private	
充足的阳光 plenty of sunlight 更加接近	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
即使你不是曼联(Manchester Unit buildings in Manchester 的信息也一定会让		关于 historic

www. visitmanchester. com/what-to-do/attractions/heritage/

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果要说一个历史建筑"保存完好的",地道英文里最常用的形容词就是 wellpreserved。

[剑桥例句] The building is well-preserved and in good condition

☆ 一个图书馆 (双语感悟)

Bilingual Reflections on Libraries

D	escribe a library.
	You should say:
	where the library is
	what facilities it has
	how often you go there
	and explain whether you like the library or not

Part 2 里有时会考到校园建筑,可以说的选择很多,比如 cafeteria / canteen (食堂),dorm / dormitory / hall of residence (学生宿舍楼),gym (体育馆或健身房), administration building (行政楼),student union building (学生会大楼) 等等。至于教 学楼,在英语里一般不叫 teaching building ×,而是叫作某某 Hall 或者某某 faculty building。

library 是校园建筑里比较好说的一种,光是图书馆里的设施(facilities)和喜欢图书馆的原因(why you like it)就可以谈不少了,而且还可以结合我们在 Day 7 里谈过的与library 有关的内容(p. 101)。

中国学校里的图书馆通常外观看起来很平淡,但内部明亮整洁 (From the outside, it

Keep it natural.

looks plain, but the inside is bright and clean.),但近年来英美的图书馆却有变得越 来越"张扬" (bold and daring) 的趋势, Pat 个人最喜欢的是 Seattle Public Library (右图),真正属于 the Information Age (信息 时代) 的建筑。

如果一个图书馆是校园里的标志性建 筑,英文就要说 It's a landmark on our campus。如果图书馆的外面全都是玻璃,



英文会说 It's wrapped in glass on all sides. 如果还有曲线的墙面,那么就是 curved walls。外观很漂亮可以说 It has a beautiful exterior. 室内井然有序要说 The interior is well-organised. 入口处的大厅是 entrance hall 或者 lobby,大厅里的大柱子叫 tall, thick columns。

图书馆的借书柜台叫 the circulation desk 或者直接说 the front desk,还书则没那么麻烦,直接放进 drop box 就好了。阅览室你说 reading room 考官就能听懂,英美大学图书 馆里还有一种 group study room,则是进行集体讨论 (group discussions) 用的,但一般 需要提前预订 (reserve)。有的图书馆还有 study carrete,就是用木板分开的小隔间,可 以自己坐在那里安静地看书。

国外的图书馆按照书库类型分两种:一种是 open-stack library (读者可以自己入库取书),另一种 closed-stack library 只能图书管理员入库取书。图书馆的目录室叫作 catalogue room,复印室叫 photocopy room,计算机房是 computer lab,多媒体室可以叫 multi-media center。图书管理员当然是 librarians,借书请说 check out books,也有些人 会说 sign out books,还书就是 return books。过期不还必须交 late fee。

如果你说图书馆的气氛很让人放松,就是 It offers a relaxing atmosphere. 说图书馆 有多种多样的书籍和光盘就说 It has a wide variety of books, CDs and DVDs. 如果还提 供免费无线上网 It provides free Wi-Fi. 是爱书者的乐园就叫 It's a mecca for booklovers!





我们可以把下面这个"不按常理出牌"(a wild card)的卡片也放在本节一起准备:

Describe a famous architect (建筑师)。

让孩子们用中文描述一个建筑师都是难题,更别说用英语了。

别急,其实你可以用几分钟就解决它。请分两步走:

(a) 牢记说艺术家的几个英文必备词: talented 有才华的, prolific 高产的, 作品"源 源不断的", creative designs 很有创意的设计, be passionate about 对……满腔热情的, masterpiece 杰作:

(b) 简要了解一个建筑师的生平, 比如有个网站是世界顶级建筑师大全 www. greatbuildings.com/architects.html。这个网站上建筑师的人名都是按英文姓氏的首字母 排列的,点击其中一个然后下拉到 booking 就行了,比如,请您找一找华人的骄傲 I. M. Pei (贝聿铭) 吧。

更棒的是,准备好了这道题,我们就可以一起把看似很难的另外两道题 Describe an artist. 和 Describe a creative person. 也同时准备好了。

B 组织和个人

Pat 解题 Pat's Thought

这一节我们学习对于 organisation 和 individuals 的描述。

其实最好说的 organisation 就是一个 English learning club 了,说说它在哪里,什么 人爱去,再谈谈自己熟悉的 English lectures, English corner 和 the importance of English 就够了。不过我想中国孩子们最感兴趣的 organisation 之一是 the NBA, 所以今天我们会 好好看看这个组织。其实描述什么 organisation 都是可以的,我们的本质任务是要练出用 平实、自然的英文进行描述的能力。

至于Mividual,当然就是"个人"。每天咱们都和个人打交道,但其实描述个人并不 容易。比如一个答"胖"英语就有很多词,除了 fat (很贬义),还有 overweight (语气稍客 气一点), chubby (胖乎乎的), pudgy (又矮又胖的), stout (粗壮的), 怎一个"胖" 字了得。

又比如"外向的","内向的",Pat 经常听到国内孩子们用 extroverted 和 introverted, 但这两个词其实有点大,在国外生活中虽然有时听到,但用得并不算频繁。生活口语说"外 向的"其实可以说 He's very sociable. (= outgoing), 而"内向的"则可以说 He's quiet around people he doesn't know well. (= not so outgoing),反而更自然。 ELTST

本节咱们就要研究各种不同的人。

OK. Here we go.

本类话题最有代表性的方向 Typical Topics

- Describe a family member.
- * Describe an elderly person.
- Describe a teacher who helped you before.
- Describe a famous person who you admire.
- Describe an ideal job.

展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Maps

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案,那么下面的 思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



分级演示 Sample Answers

1. 组织 (organisation)

Describe an organisation. You should say: which organisation it is what kind of organisation it is whether it is popular and explain whether you like it or not. 难度指数:★★★☆☆ NBA

which stands for the National Basketball I'd like to talk about the NBA, Association.

As far as I know (国内孩子说卡片的一个问题就是口气总像该领域的权威似的, 但其实听起来挺假的,因为并没有人会是所有问题上的专家), in was founded in New York about 70 years ago. At first, things were pretty hard, but these days, it's one of the most famous sports organisations in the world.

Here in China, many people watch live NBA games on TV. Some NBA games are even played in China, and the tickets always sell out in a couple of minutes.

My favourite NBA players are LeBron James and Stephen Curry. They are really cool. I admire them not just for their success, but also for their spirit, you know, their sportsmanship. They're real legends in my eyes.





The NBA is also a legend because it's so successful, and NBA games are always exciting to watch. I really hope more NBA players will come to China and show us their amazing basketball skills.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
联合会 association	是的缩写 stand for
成立于······ was founded in(这个	个 founded 不是"被找到",而是"被成立")
现场直播的比赛 live / laiv / games	
(门票)卖光 sell on (地道英文里这	个短语一般不用被动)
运动员精神 sportsmanship	传奇 legend
0 扩展词汇	
常规赛 regular season	季后赛 Chavoffs
受到热捧 enjoy a huge following	最有价值球员 团队精神 team spirit
有影响力的 influential	团队精神 team spirit
队员们都很团结 There's real team sp	pirit.
激励年轻人 inspire young people	励志的 inspiring
热情 passion	管理得很完善的 well-managed
很有娱乐性的 entertaining	金州勇士队 Golden State Warriors
芝加哥公牛队 Chicago Bulls	
达拉斯小牛队 Dallas Mavericks (地)	道英文里也常简称为 the Mavs)
迈阿密热火队 Miami Heat	休斯敦火箭队 Houston Rockets
波士顿凯尔特人队 Boston Celtics	洛杉矶湖人队 L A. Lakers
洛杉矶快船队 Los Angeles Clippers	克里夫兰骑士队 Cleveland Cavaliers
奥兰多魔术队 Orlando Magic	底特律活塞队 Detroit Pistons

Keep it natural.

圣安东尼奥马刺队 San Antonio Spurs (简称 the Spurs)	A
俄克拉荷马雷霆队 Oklahoma City Thunder	
菲尼克斯太阳队 Phoenix Suns (这个州的夏天超热,这大概也锻炼了 球员们的顽强精神)	请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴
如果您是一位铁杆儿的足球迷 (a passionate football fan),那么 这个网站可以解答您关于 FIFA 的各种问题:www.fifa.com/faq.html	这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

两支球队"棋逢对手"应该怎样表达呢?跟 chess 或者 opponents 都没关系, 而应该用 event matched 这个简单却地道的词。

【剑桥例句】The two teams were really evenly-matched.

请仔细听音频文件里这些 NBA 球星的名字怎么发音 (并且猜一猜他们是谁): MEASTEL TS THE

Stephen Curry

Paul George

Kyrie Irving

Derrick Rose

Russell Westbrook

Kevin Durant

Ricky Rubio

顺着这道题的思路,我们把下面这道题一起快速准备一下。

Day 8

Describe a sports star you admire.

同时身为 one of the fastest-rising NBA stars, a Harvard graduate 和粉 丝们心目当中的"Lin-sanity",大男孩林书豪让不少老美主动把英文里的 "双赢"(win-win situation)改成了 Lin-win situation。虽然因为膝盖受伤 (knee injury),不得不中途退出去年的常规赛 (missed his team's last 14 games of the regular season),但他无疑是真心英雄 (a true hero)。



Fast Facts about Jeremy Lin:

He's a Chinese-American NBA player, born and raised in California, and is very proud of being Chinese.

His parents moved to the U.S. in the 1970s.



Both of his parents are just average height, but Jeremy Lin is well over 6 feet tall. (1 foot = 30.5cm)

Although he played basketball at a high school very close to Stanford University, be attended Havard.

He got a degree in economics from Harvard and is now a professional player for the Brooklyn Nets.

Some sports reporters called him " the most surprising story in the NBA".

Jeremy Lin became a famous NBA player at the age of

23, and he definitely has an even more brilliant basketball career ahead of him.

I hope Jeremy Lin will become a point guard as great as Magic Johnson.

I really love this quote from Jeremy Lin, "When I'm on the basketball court, I try to play with all my emotion and heart."

如果您"粉"别的体育明星,不妨到www.biography.com/people/groups/sports 看 一看,比如在页面右上角的搜索框里分别输入 Andy Murray 和 Novak Djokovic,就可以找 到对网球明星安迪·穆雷和诺瓦克·德约科维奇的介绍了。 ☆ 一个组织之 健身俱乐部

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案



Let me talk about the fitness club I attend. It's very close to where I live. I go there almost every afternoon. Some friends of mine also go there to work out.

It offers a wide variety of memberships, and the membership fees are pretty reasonable. They even have three-day guest passes for people who visit their club for the first time. The club also provides group exercise classes and yoga classes.



and helpful. And with my membership can also use the swimming pool in the club for free, so it's really good value for mone.

My only complaint is sometimes it's a bit too concled. But most of the time, there's plenty of space for everyone so it's not a big problem.

轮到你了		It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
健身俱乐部 fitness club / health club	健身 work out	
会员资格 membership	瑜伽 yoga	
合理的 reasonable	免费体验券 guest pass	
跑步机 treadmill		
固定健身单车 exercise bike / stationary bike		
踏步机 steppers	设备 equipment	
建身教练 trainer	它的性价比很高 It's good v	alue for money.
--------------------------------------	---------------------	-----------------------------
抱怨 complaint	拥挤的 crowded	
0 扩展词汇		请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴
保持体格强健 keep fit	增强肌肉 build muscles	, 开运当宿望 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
咸轻压力,"减压" <mark>reduce stress</mark>	减肥 lose weight	如果是您将会怎么说

角的搜索键,在搜索栏里输入 Dan Lin,点击 Go,然后点击林丹的头像,您就能看到 对林丹的详细介绍了。

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

您出国之后立马就会发现:健身对于年轻白人来说实在是生活里太重要的一个 部分了, Pat 的很多朋友都是命可以不要, 但是不能不去 gym, 如果有几天没去健身 就开始"hold 不住"甚至 feel quilty(有负罪感) 大家参加健身俱乐部的目标多半 是为了让自己变得"更有形儿",用地道英语介绍这种健身目的绝不能说 give myself more shape X, 而要说get toned。假如你的考官正好也是一年轻白人, 考试时你能 在扣题的前提下用出这两个表达,会立刻让他/她"心有戚戚焉",不信你就试试。

【剑桥例句】Leo is exercising regularly to get toned.

2. 个人

Describe a famous singer. You should say: who the singer is how the singer became famous what is special about his / her music and explain whether you like the singer or not.



☆娱乐人物之 歌手

Pat 个人更喜欢创作型歌手 (singer-songwriter),比如中国的许巍、李健,国外的 Ed Sheeran, The Weeknd, Chris Martin 等。而且从回答 Part 2 的角度来看,创作型歌手 可说的内容也更多。 ④

在这里谈谈 Jay Chou 和他的音乐。少年时 Jay 的音乐占据了我们的 MP3,长大后 Jay 的音乐又占据了我们的 iPod。虽然在辱警事件里他明显有不当的言行,考虑到"护粉"因素,而且也已经向警方道歉,还是可以原谅的。很多人喜欢周杰伦,其实正是因为 他性格里真实的不完美吧 (He's not a perfect person, but he's always been true to himself.)。毕竟作为一个"不靠颜值" (famous for talent rather than for good looks) 的 创作型歌手, Jay 还是很典型的。

难度指数:★★☆☆ Pat 的答案

I guess you've heard a lot about Jay Chou because he's so famous in China.

He grew up in a single-parent family. When he was little, Jay didn't get good grades at school. His mother was really concerned about him. When he felt down or lonely, he looked for nice music to cheer him up.



He was kind of **average-looking**, so no one really expected him to **make it** as a singer. He started out as a **songwriter** and wrote songs for many popular singers.

Then he released his first album, "Jay". His voice was so unique that the album became an instant hit. So far all of his albums have received great reviews. He also continues to write songs for other singers, including Leehom Wang (王力宏) and Terry Lin (林志炫).

I like Jay Chou because his music is very different from other musicians'. He likes to blend a wide variety of music styles, such as R&B, hip-hop, and folk

人物



music — very creative and memorable. I guess that's why the tickets to his concerts always sell out in a couple of hours.



轻柔的嗓音 a soft and pleasant voice		
高亢、有冲击力的嗓音 a high-pitched a	and powerful voice	
擅长唱高音的"假声" has a nice false	tto	
名望与财富 fame and wealth	勤奋敬业的 hardworking and c	dedicated
一夜成名 an overnight success	音乐界 the music scene	
乐队成员 band members	主唱 lead singer / lead vocali	st
吉他手 guitarist	贝斯手 bassist	
鼓手 drummer 关系很好,很"合得来" get on very v		青参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
男孩组合(比如英国的 One Direction 和 boy band(注意:地道英文里不说 bo		的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说
喜欢欧美音乐的朋友应该经常看看 com/people/groups/singer,例如,请象 Weeknd 等创作型歌手的详细介绍 欧美乐迷都有自己喜欢的乐队,这个 迷震撼的 bands: today. msnbc. msn. com rock-bands-ever/#. UD06ZcHibBR	东亚速找出 Taylor Swift, Ed She	eeran 和 The 真正的欧美乐

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

周董已经不是"范特西" (Fantasy) 年代的"小鲜肉" (a fresh-faced young man),但他的音乐不知不觉地火了十多年,而且始终保持了高质量,堪称是音乐界的传奇人物。"音乐界"的英文是 the music scene,而"传奇人物"则叫 a legend。

【剑桥例句】Jazz legend, Ella Fitzgerald, once sang in this bar.

人 物



IELTS SPEAKING TEST

☆娱乐人物之 影星 (英美观众们熟知的刘玉玲)

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about my favourite actress, Lucy Liu. Having experienced some ups and downs in her career, now she's one of the most successful Chinese-American actresses in Hollywood.

Lucy Liu's straight black hair makes her very different from the blonde actresses in Hollywood. I think she really knows what she looks good in. For example, she often wears slim jeans because she has long legs. This makes her look even more confident and attractive.



Lucy Liu usually plays roles in action films. Her most famous role was in *Charlie's Angels* as an intelligent and confident "Angel". She looked really cool fighting all the bad guys and saving people's lives.

The 21st century is often called the Chinese Century. And now China is the second-largest market for Hollywood films. I'm sure there'll be more and more Chinese stars becoming successful in Hollywood.

轮到你了

Word Ronk

It's Your Turn.

word bank				
起起落落 ups and down	ns (这么	"有哲理"	的概念,	地道英文的说法就是这么简单)
事业 career	金发的	blonde		
牛仔裤 jeans	自信的	confident		
有吸引力的 attractive	聪明的	intelligent		
⑦扩展词汇				
名人 celebrity	家喻户晓	影的名字 a	househo	old name
		AND DESCRIPTION OF THE OWNER OF T	A DECEMBER OF THE OWNER.	And the second



名望与财富 fame and wealth	勤奋敬业的 hardworking and dedicated
优雅的 elegant	时尚的 fashionable / stylish
大片儿 blockbuster	高票房电影 box-office hit 请参考Pat的思路
海报 posters	狗仔队 paparazzi ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
侵犯他 / 她的隐私 invade his / her priva	Cy 的单词,思考 如果是您将会
访谈 interview	魅力四射的 glamorous 怎么说

这个网址可以说是英美影星介绍大全: www.biography.com/people/groups/ actors-and-ctresses-film-actor-and-film-actress 例如,请点击页面右上角的放大镜, 迅速找出对 2017年金球奖最佳男主角奖得主 Casey Affleck 的详细介绍

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

在好莱坞, Lucy Liu 是能够获得高票房电影(box-office hits)里的角色的少数 华裔演员之一,这种地位(status)真够让人羡慕的。其实不仅是明星,对任何让你 "羡慕"的人,比如对拿到了牛津全奖的大牛或者对复议后单科提高了1分的幸运 儿,你都可以发自内心地说,"I really envy you!"

[剑桥例句] I really envy her ability to talk to people she's never met before.

☆艺术家之 梵高

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about an artist I admire, Vincent Van Gogh (梵高). He was a 19th-century Dutch painter.

Van Gogh was very talented and creative. Instead of just trying to copy what he



o Day 8

saw, he used colours freely in order to better express his feelings. His painting style influenced and inspired many other painters. And now he's considered one of the greatest artists in history.



I admire Van Gogh not just because he was so talented, but also because he had great

sympathy for the poor. He often painted farmers and workers in his paintings. He even gave away most of his own money to help poor people.

Van Gogh sold only one painting during his lifetime. But I think he's much more than a great painter. He's one of the greatest cultural heroes of modern times.

No. A. S.		
轮到你了	It's Your Tur	n.
► Word Bank		
荷兰的 Dutch	有才华的Calented	
有创意的 creative	表达他的感受 Keelings	
激励 inspire	同情心 sympathy	
泛指贫穷的人们 the poor	他在世的时候 during his lifetime?	
② 扩展词汇		
很有同情心的 compassionate	名誉 tame	
抽象的 abstract	(艺术家) 多产的 prolific	
受到很高的评价 receive great reviews	天才 genius	
杰作 masterpiece		-
这个网站不仅覆盖了欧美历史上最新 且还提供了大量图片帮你亲眼"见证": totallyhistory com/art-history/famous-a	这些艺术家们的独特风格: 这个词	当借鉴 汇表里 , 思考 您将会

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

成功的艺术家通常都会有很独特的风格。基础一般的国内同学会用 He/She has a very special style. 来表达这个意思,基础好的同学们则多半会讲 He/She has a unique style. (请注意:"very unique" X 是中式英语,因为 unique 本身就不能再 比较程度了)。但其实,在地道英文里还有 instantly recognisable (一眼就能辨认出 来的)这样更形象的说法。

【剑桥例句】The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an instantiv recognisable landmark.

Pat 指南 _ _ D

关于艺术家,这个网站最大的优点是内容相当专业,可英文却简单得跟玩儿似的: library. thinking org/J001159/famart. htm



☆ 成功的领袖 小扎"(扎克伯格) 走指数 ★★★☆☆ tt 的答案 难度指数 ★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about Mark Zuckerberg, the CEO of Facebook.

He was born in New York. As a child, he was very good at computer programming. After graduating from high school, he attended Harvard University and founded Facebook, a social networking website, in his dorm room. Today, Facebook is one of the most popular websites on the Internet.

I admire him because he's a hardworking and dedicated leader. He works long hours, and expects his employees to work hard, too. But he also treats his employees very well. They are paid well and have a lot of freedom to make decisions



on their own. That's why Facebook was voted "the best company in the world to work for".

Mark Zuckerberg is also a talented and creative leader. He's always working on new ideas to improve Facebook and bring people

Day 8

closer together. Every day, millions of people share ideas and experiences with their friends on Facebook.

Mark Zuckerberg is a great public speaker as well. He even did a Q&A session in Chinese at Tsinghua University. That inspired me a lot. He must have worked really hard on his Chinese skills.

Mark Zuckerberg is not just a successful business leader, but also an excellent role model for young people.



最畅销作品 bestseller

(乔布斯的名言) "保持对新事物的渴望,并敢于承担风险。" "Stay hungry. Stay foolish."

这个网址提供了大量当代著名商业领袖的详尽介绍: www. biography.com/ people/groups/business-leaders 例如,您可以用页面右上角的放大镜轻松地找到对 苹果现任 CEO Tim Cook 和"特斯拉"(Tesla) CEO Elon Musk 的完整介绍。

Part 2 里面有时还会考到你喜欢的一本书。你的选择当然很多,而且只要坚持用 浅显易懂的英语那么也不会很难。但描述一个名人的传记(biography)仍然是其中最 轻松的选择之一,因为你只要说明自己是在哪里看到的这本书,价格如何,你为什么 决定要买,读了之后有什么感受就好了。其中的第3 点和第4 点可以和描述一个你崇 拜的 leader 或者 artist 充分结合起来准备,是"省时、省事"的好方法(当然也别忘 了 p. 80 关于 reading 的内容)

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

真正成功的领袖必然是有魅力的,但"魅力"一词如果用国内朋友们使用过度的 charm 来表达却实在是相当地没有"魅力"。请改用 charisma /kə'rizmə/来描述政治家、企业家或者明星们等公众人物的"范儿"吧,考官对这个词的反应绝不会让你后悔。

【剑桥例句】How did a man of so little personal charisma get to be a leader?

☆家庭成员之 母亲

(您可以用这道题同时准备描述老师的词汇和短语)



Pat 的答案

Let me talk about my mother. She's of average height and build. She has long hair and wears glasses.

My mother is a high school teacher. She's caring and understanding, and she's always ready to help others, including her students and her colleagues.

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Day 8

She's very good at sharing her knowledge with her students because she can explain things in a simple and clear way. She also has a good sense of humour and always tries to make her classes fun and interesting. She's a teacher who really cares about her students, and she always has a smile on her face. I think that's why her students like her so much.



As a wife and a mother, she loves her family and takes good care of everyone. When I was a child, she often helped me with homework, and told me interesting stories at bedtime. Now she still likes to share her ideas and opinions with me. But she's never forced and opinions on me. She respects me and supports me in everything I do.

My mother also has amazing sooking skills. The food she cooks is simple, but tastes really good. So she's not just an excellent teacher, but also a great mother, and a person I can always turn to for good advice. And everyone says I take after her...

轮到你了

ake after her	MEISTEL It's Your Turn.
轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
中等身材 is of average height and b	ouild(这个固定说法里的 build 是作名词)
关心别人而且善解人意的 caring and	d understanding
同事 colleague (请您注意听音频里 这个词)	colleagues 的正确发音,很多中国同学会说错
分享知识 share her knowledge	很有幽默感 has a good sense of humour
关心 care about	面带微笑 has a smile on her face
照顾 take good care of	
准备睡觉的时候 at bedtime (家长给 stories)	孩子讲的"睡前故事"英文里就叫 bedtime



时间充裕的同学还可以看看这个网址: www.theguardian.com/teacher-network/ teacher-blog/2014/oct/31/effective-teaching-10-tips 看看英国人对真正行之有效的教 学 (effetive teaching) 的理解和国内老师们有什么相同和不同

人物

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

在英美文化里,人们公认的一个好老师的标准除了 patient (耐心的), confident (自信的), know his / her subject well (对自己的教学科目有深入的了解) 之外, "口齿清晰、表达能力强"也是必不可少的要求之一。所以当准备 a teacher 这个话题的时候,请务必记牢 articulate / aː'tikjələt/这个单词,因为它就是在国外生活里形容一个人口齿清晰、表达能力强最常用的那个词。

[剑桥例句] This young lady was intelligent and articulate.

Time to Branch Out. 推而广之	
Describe a person who helped you before.	
Describe a person who speaks a foreign language.	
Describe your ideal job. (理想的工作	
Y.	
补充弹药	
intelligent 聪明的	TST
well-organised 做事很有条理的	~ /
friendly and helpful 友好的、乐于助人的	Extra
advice and encouragement 建议和鼓励	Amm



IELTS 口试里有时会考<u>Describe a well-paid job you want to do in the future.</u> 这个话题。您可以在这里找到对 2016 年英国最高薪酬行业的详细介绍: www. theguardian. com/money/2016/oct/31/highest-paid-jobs-2016-ons-annual-survey-hours-earnings

Part 2 里还有这样一个卡片: Describe a job that can make the world a better place.

"能够让世界变得更美好的工作",这话题真能让考生当场 pass out。其实仔细想想,教师不就是这样的工作么?或者说一个跟环保有关的工作也是扣题的:www.renewableenergyjobs.com/content/what-is-a-green-job 点击这个网页上面的任何一个工作,您就能立刻找到对它的详细描述。

☆老人与孩子(双语感悟) Bilingual Reflections

描述老人时当然也可以借用我们在前面一道题里谈到的地道词汇和短语,例如 kind and patient, a good role model, friendly and helpful 等。但英文里还有些好词和好短语则是描述老年人的时候专用的。

老人身体很好,我们除了可以说 He's / She's healthy and active. 地道英文里还专门 有 He's / She's hale and hearty. 这个说法,是特指老年人的身体好,"老当益壮"。但如 果老人走路已经需要拐杖,地道英文则会说 He / She walks slowly with a walking stick

白发就是 white han, 灰发是 grey hair, 而"花白的头发"在地道英文里则叫 salt and pepper hair。如果已经秃顶,英文会用形容词 bald. 如果有白胡子, 就说 He has a white beard. 脸上有皱纹英文要说 He She has some wrinkles on his / her face.



说老年人很乐观,除了大词 optimistic 之外,还可 以用更简单的英文说 He / She always looks on the bright side of things. 老人心态年轻要说 He's / She's young at heart. 很有幽默感当然就说 has a good sense of humour 最地道。老年人下棋是 play chess, 打麻将是 play mahjong,经常锻炼就是 exercise regularly,打太极叫 practise taichi,遛狗是 walk his

(or her) dog, 悠闲地散步、"遛弯儿"是 take a stroll, "跳广场舞"则要叫 practise their Square Dance routine。

要说老人"睿智",那么仅仅用 bright 可就不够了,应该说 wise 才对。老人的记忆力 还是很好就说 He / She still has a great memory. 老人的思维依然清晰是 His / Her mind is still sharp. 老人还是非常好学要说 He's / She's still eager to learn. 老年人的人生经历 丰富是 He / She has a lot of life experience. 如果要说"我总是可以从他 / 她那里获得很好的建议",地道英文里常会说 I can always count on him (or her) for good advice.

对于儿童, 地道英文里同样有很多形象的词汇和短语, 而且也都不难。

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

小朋友胖乎乎的叫 chubby,比较瘦的叫 slim (如果说 thin 则听起来会略带贬义),描述小朋友很 可爱除了 cute 之外也可以说 adorable。

Day 8

小朋友的身心都很健康就说 is happy and healthy, 喜欢户外活动是likes outdoor activities, 小朋友很有活力在地道英文里会说 He's / She's full of



energy 或者 lively and energetic, 性格很外向叫 He's / She's very sociable. 跟谁都能玩 儿得来是 He / She gets on well with everybody. 喜欢和别人合作就说 He / She is a team player. 如果小朋友跟自己不熟悉的人在一起时会比较安静,则说 He / She tends to be quiet around people he / she doesn't know well.

小朋友在学校成绩好要说 He / She gets good grades at school. 很守规矩的叫wellbehaved,有礼貌而且尊敬别人的叫polite and respectful,是同班同学们的榜样英文是 He's / She's a role model for bis / her classmates,聪明而且又有创造力的叫intelligent and creative,在某方面有天赋要说 a talent for (music, painting, maths 等),说一 个小朋友学习努力,虽然也可以说 studies hard,但在真实的英美生活里还是 He / She works hard.更常用。

小朋友的求知欲很强,凡事总爱问个为什么,英文里说 He / She has an inquiring mind. 孩子是父母的"掌上明珠",地道英文叫 He's / She's the copile of his (or her) parents' eye. 要注意的是:这是个英美生活里的惯用说法, apple 和 eye 都用单数听起来 才 native。

▲ C 人与自然

Pat 解题 Pat's Thought



natural beauty 这个词在英文中其实有两个意思,一个是指自然的美景,另一个是指"素颜"的美。当然两个意思都挺好,但这一节咱们只说第一个。

英美的生活离自然还是挺近的。Pat 在 BC 开 车时还见过一只灰熊 (grizzly bear) 妈妈带着两 只熊宝 (bear cubs) 慢悠悠地违章横穿马路,如 果真的不小心撞到 (run over) 它们,就要被动 物权益主义者们 (animal rights activists) 告上法 庭 (be taken to court) 了。

英国和北美的生活里最重要的娱乐也是 fishing, camping (野营), hiking (远足), skiing (滑雪) 等接近大自然的活动,而且英国、 美国和加拿大的国家公园都很多。Pat 个人最喜欢 Alberta 的 Banff, 那里的自然美景真的把人的 呼吸都带走了 (The scenery is really breathtaking.)。



本类话题最有代表性的方向 Typical Topics

- * Describe a park.
- Describe a good place to relax.
- * Describe a short trip.
- * Describe a river / lake / sea.
- * Describe a place of natural beauty.

展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Maps

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案,那么下面的 思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



分级演示 Sample Answers

1. 一个有水的地方

☆ 西湖

Describe a river, lake or sea you have visited. You should say: where it was when you went there what you saw there and explain whether you would like to go there again. *****

Pat 的答案

I visited the West Lake last September It's close to downtown Hangzhou and very easy to get to by public transport.

I visited the lake on a clear, sunny day. The water of the lake was sparkling in the sunlight. The lake breeze felt warm and fresh. I could also see some rolling hills in the near distance.

I took a stroll near the lake. The grass and trees were well-trimmed, and there were many picnic tables and benches by the lake. There were also bicycles for rent. Everything looked neat and tidy.

I also visited the "Ten Scenes of the West Lake", which were the ten most famous tourist attractions nearby, such as the Lei Feng Pagoda. It offered an amazing view of the lake and the hills.

I really enjoyed the stroll. The lake and its surroundings felt so calm and peaceful. I took lots of photos there. I really hope I'll visit it again.



💶 Day 8 -

.....

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
市中心 downtown	公共交通 public transport
闪亮 sparkling	微风 breeze
起伏的小山 rolling hill	在不远处 in the near distance
散步,很悠闲地走 lake a stroll	修剪得很好的 well-trimmed
野餐桌 picnic table	室外的长椅 bench
干净整洁的 neat and tidy	旅游景点 tourist attractions
亚洲国家的古塔。pagoda	周围的环境 surroundings
宁静安详的 calm a speaceful	
一 描述风景的扩展词汇	a second a sold
自然风景 (注意:它是不可数的)	
清澈的 crystal-clear	壮观的Toosclacular
非常美的 gorgeous / breathtaking	壮观的 瀑布 waterfait 岩石 rock t-see for nature lovers 山泉 mountain spring
轰鸣 roar	岩石 rock
喜欢大自然的人们必去的地方 a mus	t-see for nature lovers
峡谷 valley	山泉 mountain spring
温泉 hot spring	人造的喷泉 fountain
自然界的天然草地 meadow	人工维护的草地 lawn
亭子 gazebo	盛开的花 blooming flowers
芳香 fragrance	花坛 flowerbed
(鸟或昆虫) 鸣叫 chirp	The second second second second
秋叶 autumn leaves / autumn foliage	(注意 foliage 不可数)
野餐 have a picnic	去远足,徒步旅行 go hiking services and
去野营 go camping	
and the second	

做日光浴 go sunbathing (注意听音	频里它的正确读音)	
宿营地 campsite	烧烤 have a barbecue	
在湖上划船 row a boat on the lake	闪亮的水面 sparkling water	
泛起波纹的水面 rippling water		
光着脚在沙滩上走 walk barefoot on	the beach	
搭沙堡 build sandcastles	捡贝壳 collect shells	
海鸥 seagulls		
摆脱繁忙的都市生活 get away from	busy city life	
更加接近大自然 get closer to nature		0
感觉心情平静并且很放松的 feel calm	n and relaxed	请参考Pat的思路,并适当借鉴
暂时忘掉工作 forget above for a	a while	这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
让疲劳的身心恢复良好的状态	The second secon	如果是您将会怎么说
小村庄 village		
热情好客的 are welcoming and friend	dly	sor of a
历史遗迹 historic sites	当地人 seals dly 维护得很好的 well-mark sed	
参观费 admission fee	旅行纪念品 souvenirs	2015
令人愉快的经历 an enjoyable experie	ence	
令人难忘的经历 a memorable experie		
Del 0 Fizzz havenue		

Part 2 里面还有一道相关考题是 <u>Describe a place near water</u> (一个靠近水的地方). 其实只要描述一栋湖边的别墅或者一个海边的宾馆,我们就可以把学过的关于别墅和宾 馆的地道词汇和短语自然而且扣题地使用起来。您还可以从 www. huffingtonpost. co. uk/2014/06/20/beach-hotels-britain-uk-good-hotel-guide_n_5515270. html 这个网址 看到对英国最棒的一些水边宾馆的详细介绍。

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

"风景如画的",如果说 It looks like a picture. 并不严格对应,因为 picture 其 实也可以很丑,但 picture 的形容词形式 picturesque /piktfə'resk/在地道口语中却是 一个纯粹的褒义词。例如:

【剑桥例句】It's apicturesque village.

2. 公园 / 花园

Describe a park / garden. You should say: what it's called where it is what people do there and explain whether you like the park garden or not. #SISIEL TS T ☆ 公园之 海洋公园 难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'd like to describe Ocean Park Hong Kong. It's about a 20-minute drive from downtown Hong Kong.

The park has many different sections. There's a lot to see and do as you walk around these sections.

For example, in the "Strait" section, you'll find thousands of sea creatures, including sharks, turtles and seahorses. In the outdoor "Wild Coast" section, you can see the exciting dolphin show. And in the play area, children



can even touch some of the sea creatures they like.

I like the Ocean Park because it has an amazing variety of sea creatures. It can really help visitors learn about sea life. The park is also very well-organised, and the employees are friendly and helpful. I think the park is good for all ages.



这个网址提供了英国各地区的自然保护区信息: www. wildlifetrusts. org/wildlife/ reserves,沿着地图一路点击就可以看到你想了解的地区的 nature reserve 详情

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

泛指"海洋生物",您不妨试试 sea life / marine life 这两种说法,它们会让考官 紧皱着的眉头舒展开。

[剑桥例句] The children were amazed by the variety of sea life.



☆ 花園

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

My favourite garden is the Classical Chinese Garden. It's just a short walk from where I live.

This garden is always a fun place to visit, and it's beautiful in every season.

In the spring, the leaves and grass in the garden turn green, and the flowers bloom. Everything feels so fresh and energetic. In the summer, the trees in the garden provide comfortable shade on hot days, and visitors can watch the fish play in the lotus pond.



Most of the trees there change colours in the autumn, which looks amazing. The garden feels good even in the winter because the snow on the trees and on the ground makes it calm and peaceful.

I like this garden because it makes me feel

relaxed and happy. And the air in the garden is always fresh and clean. It's like an oasis in the city. It's also a great place to learn about trees and plants.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
变成绿色 turn green	开花 bloom
充满生机和活力的 fresh and energetic	树荫 shade
莲花池 lotus pond	变颜色 change colours
安静祥和的 calm and peaceful	
城市里的一片"绿洲" an oasis in the cit 开城市里的各种喧	y (地道英文里常用这个短语来形容可以躲 闹拥挤的地方)



provide the second state of the		
2 扩展词汇		
欣赏 appreciate	botanical garden 植物园	
很悠闲地走,散步 take a stroll	优雅的 elegant	
挺拔的 tall and strong	(植物)纤细的 slim	
岩石 rock	溪流 stream	
探索 explore	发现 discover	
放松 unwind (请注意听音频里对它	的读音)	请参考Pat的思路
这个网站提供了对伦敦的很多公考前放松也挺不错: www.allinlondor	园的介绍,而且网站上的图片用来 <mark>n. co. uk/park. php</mark>	,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

有很多中国同学问 Pat "亭子」在英文里面叫什么。其实英美公园里的亭子 并不是很多,而且即使有也远不如于国公园里面的亭子那么"惊艳" (breathtaking)。但只要您跟 native speakers说 gazebo 这个词,他们就立刻能 理解你是在说"亭子"了 ⑤。

[剑桥例句] The area surrounding the gazebo is a popular place for children.

常见植物英文名称(如果想让答案更长,您当然还可以适当介绍一下自己在花园里最 喜欢的植物,但不要太深入,因为毕竟这道题是考花园而不是考你最喜欢的植物,切记: 扣题很重要)

tulip 郁金香	lily 百合
peony 牡丹	daisy 雏菊
daffodil 水仙花	orchid 兰花
sunflower 向日葵	carnation 康乃馨
oak tree 橡树	palm tree 棕榈树
willow 柳树	holly 冬青



☆野生动物之 大象

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

Elephants are fascinating creatures.

They are huge. African elephant can stand as tall as 4 meters. Actually, they



are the largest four-footed animals in the world. But they are very gentle and slow-moving. They don't "bully" other animals.

Elephants use their trunk to "grab" food and use their tusks to dig for water.

They are social animals, and the mothers lead the whole family group.

People say that elephants never forget. Trainers can

even train them to use simple tools. For thousands of years, elephants have been trained to carry heavy stuff and carry people through the jungle. They are like hard-working energies for their owners. But they ask for bananas instead of cash...



IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

考到动物的话题,如果只是不停地说 animals 其实挺郁闷的。口试里绕开 animals 的好方法就是用 creatures 这个词,或者也可以说 living creatures。

[剑桥例句] Blue whales are the largest creatures ever to have lived.

☆野生动物之 狮子

难度指数:★★☆☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

Just like the liger, the lion is also a member of the cat family and ... in many ways lions are just big cats

Humans have been so amazed by lions' size and strength that we call them the king of beasts. And a lion's roar can be heard up to 10 kilometers away.



Lions live in groups. Adult females look after their cubs together, thunt together and defend their hunting grounds together. But the males tend to be lazy, and some of them are actually troublemakers. Some cubs even get hurt by adult males when the adult females are away.

I like lions not really because they are strong, but because my girlfriend (for girls: boyfriend) is a Leo





nature

look after	小狮子 / 小老虎 / 小熊等 cu	b
hunt	保护 defend	
烦者 troublemaker	狮子座 Leo	
展词汇		
<mark>pride</mark> (地道英文里一群狮· "骄傲" 有关 ☺)	子经常被叫作 a pride of lions,可能	跟雄狮看起来很
sign	凶猛的 fierce / ferocious	
prey (注意:它是不可数的	勺)	请参考Pat的思路,并适当借鉴
这个网站提供了英格兰和苏格兰各主要动物园的详细介绍: britishzoos co.uk/		, 一词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说
	hunt 烦者 troublemaker 展词汇 pride (地道英文里一群狮 "骄傲"有关 ③) sign prey (注意:它是不可数的	hunt 保护 defend 烦者 troublemaker 狮子座 Leo 展词汇 pride (地道英文里一群狮子经常被叫作 a pride of lions, 可能 "骄傲"有关 ③) sign 凶猛的 fierce / ferocious prey (注意:它是不可数的)

要表达"群居动物",除了可以说**They** live together. 之外,还有个很地道的说法: social animals 。例如:

[剑桥例句] Lions are social animals that live in prides.

☆ 宠物之 鹦鹉

难度指数:★★☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

Keep it natural.

Parrots have gorgeous feathers and a big tail.



They are good at copying human sounds. When you visit a pet shop, you'll probably find some parrots **repeating** "Hello! Hello!". And **parrot owners** often notice that their birds say words like "goodnight" and "snack" at the right



自然界



moment. Some parrots may even have the vocabulary of a two-year-old child.

Most of the time, parrots are very friendly. But be careful! Sometimes parrots do attack the people around them...



Pat 的海外生活英语实录

要说某种事物很"烦人",除了 It's annoying. 之外, It really bothers me. 也是 英美生活里的常用说法之一。

[剑桥例句] The noise in this area really bothers me.

Pat指南

Describe an animal / pet you saw in your city.

在英美城市里见到最多的宠物永远都是 dogs,这个网站为"爱狗控"们提供了对各种狗狗最详尽的描述: www.terrificpets.com/dog_breeds/

4. 重要的植物

Describe an important plant in your country.

You should say:

what the plant is

what it looks like

whether you like it



and explain why it is important in your country.



I'm going to talk about bamboo, which is one of the most important plants in China

Bamboo is a kind of grass, but it can grow as tall as 30 meters — that's even taller than many trees. It grows very fast, like a couple of centimeters a day.



Another interesting thing about bamboo is although the bamboo stem is not thick, it's very strong.

It has been a symbol of vitality and honesty in the Chinese culture. It's also known as one of "The Three Friends of Winter" in China because it can survive cold winters.

Bamboo is also an important economic plant. Its use includes furniture making and building construction. It has contributed a lot to the Chinese economy.

And as you probably know, bamboo is the panda's main source of food. Bamboo shoots are also widely used in Chinese dishes. I love dishes that have bamboo shoots in them. They taste really good.

____ Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

轮到你了	lt's	Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
厘米 centimeter	茎 stem	
是生机的象征 a symbol of vitality	诚实 honesty	
经济植物 economic plant	建造 construction	
主要的食物来源 main source of food	竹笋 bamboo shoot	
「「「「「」」		
常青的 evergreen	直立的 upright	
松 pine 如子	梅 plum	
清淡的味道 a mild fla 备考时间充足的同学可以从这个网址 www.plantlife.org.uk/wild_plants/		请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Pat 注意到有很多中国的传统建筑外面会种竹子作为一种装饰。如果要用地道英 文说"它可以成为很好的装饰"怎么说呢? native speakers 会说 It makes a good decoration. 这句话里的 make 不是制作,而是"可以成为"的意思。

[剑桥例句] The painting makes a good decoration in the living room.

☆野餐 (双语感悟) Bilingual Reflections

近期在亚太区经常有一只卡片熊出没:

Describe a picnic / an outdoor meal.

而且,这个答案如果说得比较有特色,就可以和另一道高频难题 Describe a special meal. 一起解决了,所以就更值得关注。

Pat 发现有很多中国同学不太了解野餐(picnic)的常用英文表达,其实 native speakers 在野餐时的用词并不"野":

Keep it natural.

中文	地道英文表达
₹ 色.	scenery
家庭聚会	a family gathering
L家人一块儿聚餐(一般是每家都带些吃 內。然后大家一起 share)	a potluck
公园里提供的野餐桌	picnic table
长椅	bench
小板凳儿	small stool
春天和秋天野餐时铺在地上的毯子(夏天则 经常用 plaid sheet "格子布"代替)	picnic blanket
铺开	spread out
背包 🔉	backpack
纸盘/纸杯	paper plate / paper cup
叉子	forks
л 13.	knife
勺子	spoons
装食品和餐具的篮子(在国外野餐时是必)的,考官听到会觉得很亲切)	利 picnic basket
烧烤 (注意: barbecue 既可以做名词也可) 做动词)	have a barbecue
烧烤用的原料	barbecue ingredients (常见的例如 chicken, lamb, shrimp 等)
烧烤的(后面加上肉类或者海鲜就行了)	grilled / barbecued (chicken, shrimp, salmon)
调味酱	sauce
动动	salad
甜点 (注意: 它的发音和沙漠 desert 可不一	样) dessert (比如 cakes 和 biscuits)
水果	fruit (比如 strawberries 种 grapes)
瓶装水	bottled water
果汁	juice
垃圾袋	garbage bag
拉·	take photos (过去时是 took photos
玩游戏	play games
3/5 MT A	a memorable experience

D 休闲娱乐

💶 Day 8

Pat 解题 Pat's Thought

很多同学在出国之前,都爱幻想(fantasise)国外是不是比中国更好玩。

这个嘛……那得看您喜欢什么了。

如果您喜欢 sports 和 outdoor activities,那就绝对应该出国,因为选择实在太多了。 连 golfing 这样国内的"贵族运动"(high-class sports),在英美也只不过是大众运动 (popular sports),因为价格并不贵(not very pricey)。



但如果您既不喜欢 sports,也不喜欢 outdoor activities,甚至都不喜欢 going to the cinema,那么你真有可能会觉得国外 的生活挺单调的。西方人最喜欢的休闲活 动除了 sports,基本上就是 hiking, fishing, camping, going to the cinema, clubbing, bar-hopping...甚至连"看人"



(people-watching) 和"看鸟儿"(bird-watching) 在英美都算是休闲活动。至于"洗脚城"(foot massage parlors) 在国外则少之又少,而卡拉 OK (karaoke) 也没有像国内这 么 "火" ("in")。

到底哪种娱乐更好玩儿?那只能说是"萝卜白菜,各有所爱"了(Different strokes for different folks.)☺。

leisure

本类话题最有代表性的方向 Typical Topics

- * Describe a childhood game.
- * Describe an outdoor activity.
- * Describe your favourite sport.
- * Describe a TV programme that you like / dislike.

Describe a foreign country you wish to travel to.

展开本类话题的思维导图 Shind Map

BARTA

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案,那么下面的 思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



💶 Day 8

分级演示 Sample Answers

1. 童年时的游戏

Describe a game you enjoyed as a child.

You should say:

where you played this game

who you played it with

how it was played

and explain why you liked it.



难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I often played hide-and-seek as a child. We usually played this game in a park or in a building with lots of rooms.

The game was like this: one of us, called the "seeker", searched around for the "hiders". The game started with the seeker covering his or her eyes and counting to 100, while everyone else ran away and found a place to hide.

After the counting was finished, the seeker opened his or her eyes and started searching for



the hiders. And that was my favourite part of the game. The hiders tried their best to keep quiet. But then, there was always someone who got caught, and this person would be the next seeker.

I really enjoyed this game because it was simple but exciting, and it helped us stay active. These days, my friends and I have fun by sitting around and playing

leisure

computer games, which can be unhealthy. Sometimes I really miss the simple fun of playing hide-and-seek.


👝 Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

小朋友玩户外游戏除了"好玩儿"(fun)之外,另一个重要的作用是可以锻炼 孩子们的社会交往能力 social skills。

[剑桥例句] There're many online games that can help children improve their social skills.

2. 最喜欢的运动

☆ 最喜欢的运动之游泳

Describe your favourite sport.	
You should say	
when you started this sport	
how you learned to do it	
whether you can do it well	
and explain why you like it.	清泳

难度指数:★★★☆☆

男生女生都可以说的常见运动的应该就是 swimming,而且描述游泳益处的词汇和短语也完全可以自然地用到很多其它运动上面。

Pat 的答案

My favourite sport is swimming.

I learned to swim when I was 8. My instructor was very patient and helpful. At first, I couldn't swim at all. I was even afraid of the water. My instructor told me to relax and concentrate. He showed me patiently how to move my arms and kick my legs. Little by little, I began to feel comfortable in the water. Then he taught me how to control my breathing. It took me a lot of practice to learn to breathe properly. But by the end of the swimming course, I'd become very confident in my swimming

skills.

Now I'm a pretty good swimmer, and I go swimming every weekend. It helps me keep fit and improves my strength and balance. It's also a good way to relax and reduce stress. And I've made many friends at our local swimming center.



如果有空,您还可以看看 BBC 怎样介绍常见的极限运动 (extreme sports): news.bbc.co.uk/cbbcnews/hi/find_out/guides/sport/extreme_sports,如果还觉得不够"刺激",那么还可以再访问这个网站 www.buzzle.com/articles/list-of-extremesports.html,它对最常见的极限运动都给出了详尽的解释。

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录 在 IELTS 口试里, 谈到体育运动时往往会说到一项运动很"耗费体力的", 地道 英文里有个常用词叫 strenuous, 是个拿分效果明显的表达: [剑桥例句] Hannah's doctor advised her not to take any strenuous exercise. Time to Branch Out. 推而广之 Describe a skill. Describe something that you are good at. Describe a difficult thing that you can do well. Describe something you hope to learn. 「 self-confiled の 対立自信 补充弹药 challenging 很有挑战的 overcome the difficulties 克服困难

3. 有趣的新闻

☆ 一条有趣的新闻之 银行劫匪



难度指数:★★☆☆☆

如果你明白考官真正需要的其实只是一个扣题(to-the-point)、自然(natural-sounding)、清晰(direct and clear)的描述,就不应该让自己的答案里面充斥着大词和 长难句,因为那样的答案不仅听起来会让 native speakers 费解,而且也和考官的期待背 道而驰(run counter to what they expect)。

Pat 的答案

Let me share with you a piece of interesting news I heard on TV last weekend.

Last Friday afternoon, a man went into a bank in New York and tried to rob it. He was probably not a bad person. He wanted to rob the bank because he had lost his job, and then he lost his house and his car. The only thing he had was debt. So he decided to rob the bank and get some money.



"Fill the bag up?.. With what?!"

What made the news interesting was that he didn't have a gun. So this guy just took a banana and put it in his pocket. He thought that could fool the bank tellers.

He entered the bank, walked up to a teller, told her he had a gun and asked her to give him some cash. Of course the police came. This guy got so scared that he pulled out his "gun", I mean, his banana...

The news was interesting. But actually it was a sad story. These days, many people have lost their jobs because of the economy. I feel sorry for them.



ODay 8	IEL	TS SPEAKING TEST
2 扩展词汇		
新闻播音员 news presenter / anchor	值得信赖的 reliable	
有误导性的 misleading	轰动的 sensational	
丑闻 scandal	发人深思的 thought-provol	king
侵犯他们的隐私 invade their privacy		
如果您对英语新闻有深入的兴趣, 新择: www.cnn.com。如果您现在直接看那么也可以试试 CNN 的学生版: www. 这个网站对于适应出国之后每天都要看错的"试水"所取	CNN 常规版还感觉吃力, . cnn. com/studentnews/,	请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说
Pat 的海外生活英语实录	4	
在地道英文里, fun 作形容词时是 您要说一件事情是"超级搞笑的",请 出于职业准则不会放声大笑,但却会因	用 hilarious 这个形容词。考官听 为你的用词准确而会心地微笑	到这个词虽然
	sel TS	~
Time to Branch Out. 推而广之	STEL TS	~教
	1.0	

Describe something that made you laugh.

补充弹药

crack sb. up 让某人大笑

hilarious 超级搞笑的

punch line 一个笑话最后的那句话,"包袱"

Extra Ammo

4. 电视节目

Describe a TV programme you like.

You should say:

what kind of programme it is

what it is like

whether it is popular



and explain why you like it.

家庭滑稽录像

难度指数:★★★☆☆☆注意間目言言

My favourite TV show is America's Funniest Home Videos. It's a very popular reality show.

The show is like ... people send in their funny. homemade videos. Then the host plays the videos on a large screen and makes comments on the videos.

Many of the videos show funny moments at weddings or parties. Some people also send in videos showing the hilarious mistakes made by their young children. Sometimes the videos are organised around popular themes, such as pets, birthdays or vacations.



I like this show because the host has a great sense of humor. He keeps the viewers laughing throughout the show. I like the show also because it's all about family life and ordinary people. I guess that's why it attracts so many viewers.

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

轮到你了	lt's	s Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
真人秀 reality show	家庭录像 homemade vide	0
主持人 host	评论 make comments	
有趣的瞬间 funny moments	超级搞笑的 hilarious	
围绕组织起来 are organised around.	. 主题 theme	
很强的幽默感 a great sense of humour	收看节目的人们 viewers	
吸引 attract		
0 扩展词汇		-
竞赛节目 game show	有才华的 talented	请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴
参加竞赛节目的选手 contestants	说话很机敏的 witty	这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
奖品 prize	综艺节目 variety show	如果是您将会
极限挑战 Go Fighting	向答节目 quiz show	怎么说
选秀类节目 talent show	厨艺节目 cookery show	
旅游节目 travel show	相亲节目 blind she show	
嘉宾 guests	科学类真人秀 scientific ce	lity show
最强大脑 The Brain	是街谈巷议的话题 is the ta	Ik of the town
很有争议性的节目 a controversial show		

时间充裕的同学可以在 www. dooyoo. co. uk/discussion/top-ten-quiz-shows/ 385040/和 www. dooyoo. co. uk/discussion/top-ten-quiz-shows/这两个网址看到英国 观众到底怎样点评在英国收视率很高的 quiz show (问答节目)。

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

说电视节目或者广播节目"引人入胜的",国内同学们一般会想到 interesting 或者 attractive,其实最准确的应该是 engaging 这个词。

[剑桥例句] A good radio show is always engaging.

Time to Branch Out.

推而广之

Describe a radio programme.

描述一个广播节目

补充词汇和短语

		_
talk show 聊天节目	a panel of guests 嘉宾团队	ر
interviews 访谈	call-in show 观众打电话参与的节目	5
live phose calls 由观众现场打进的电话		5
join the discourse (听众)参与讨论		2
lively conversations 气氛很活跃的谈话	broadcast 播放	5
attract many listeners 吸引大量的听众		2
receive good reviews 获得很好的评价		5
weather information 天气信息	tratic information 交通信息	2
informative 信息大的	entertainto,娱乐性强的	5
educational 很有知识性的	el TSX	5
	很有幽默感	5

IELTS 口试有时会考 Describe a time when you received something free, such as a free gift, a free meal or a free film.。就像在国内一样,在英美也常有 邀请听众 (listeners) 或者观众 (viewers) 打进电话的节目 (call-in show)。听 众或者观众可以参与讨论 (join the discussion),发表自己的看法 (share their own opinions) 或者参加有奖竞猜 (quiz game / quiz contest),回答一些很有趣 的问题 (answer some interesting questions),然后就可以获得免费的礼品卡 (free gift cards)、电影票 (free film tickets)、演唱会门票 (free concert tickets) 等等。当然,您也可以选择直接说自己参加了一次幸运抽奖 (entered a lucky draw),并且赢得了免费奖品 (won a free prize),只是这样说的答案相对会短一 些 ④

J

J

Extra Ammo





☆ 电视节目之 选秀节目

各种歌手选秀节目 (singing talent shows) 在中国引起了很多关注,这让 Pat 想到了 正在美国大行其道的歌手选秀节目——The Voice。您不妨比较一下东西方同一类节目的 形式 (format) 到底有哪些异同:

Pat 的答案

I'd like to talk about a popular singing talent show called "The Voice". It has three stages of competition: the blind auditions, the battles, and the live shows.



Only people with real singing talent are invited to the blind auditions, — the coaches can hear the singers perform, but they can't see the singers because they sit with their back to the singers. If a coach is impressed by a singer's voice, he or she pushes a button to select the singer for his or her team. Then the coach's chair turns around to face the singer.

Once the teams are formed, the battle is on. In this stage, the coaches focus on developing their singers' singing skills. They also have two of their team members compete against each other. Then the coaches decide which singers can get to the next stage. At the end of the battles, only the strongest members of each team go on to the live shows.

During the live shows, the top singers from each team compete against each other. The audience can vote to save their favourite singer. In the end, each team has only one member left to compete against the other teams. The winner of this final competition is then named "The Voice" and receives the prize of a recording contract.



I like this show because the singers are really talented, and they put in a lot of hard work to improve their singing skills. And their coaches also work very hard to help them improve. Watching this show is both relaxing and inspiring. That's why it attracts so many viewers.

轮到你了		lt'	s Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank			
歌手选秀类节目 singing talent show	阶段		
盲选 the blind auditions	组内ス	大战 the battles	
现场对决 the live shows	导师		
表演 perform	按钮		
挑选 select	竞争	compete (动词) / com	petition (名词)
观众 audience	投票		
唱片合同 金 contract	有才生	华的 talented	
励志的 inspiring	吸引		
② 扩展词汇 》 《关注门》			请参考Pat的思路
激烈的竞争 fierce competition 不不		被淘汰 is eliminated	,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
很有回报的经历 a rewarding experie	nce S		的单词,思考
值得回忆的经历 a memorable experi		MEISTA	如果是您将会怎么说
有趣而且令人愉快的 fun and enjoyal		METRIEL TS T	

厨艺节目 (cookery shows) 是在中英两国都很流行的一类电视节目。这个网站 是英国著名的"电视食神" (celebrity TV chef) Jamie Oliver 的官网: www. jamieoliver.com。他最擅长的就是用很简单的原料做出又好吃又健康的食品 (cook tasty and healthy food with simple ingredients),即使你没学会那些 recipes (菜的做 法),至少也能够对英国人喜欢的厨艺节目风格有更深入的了解 ③

☆ 电视系列剧之 生活大爆炸

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案





- Day 8

The two main characters of this sitcom are Leonard and Sheldon. Both of them are Caltech physicists and they share an apartment. Leonard has an IQ of 173 but has no problem communicating with the "average" people. Sheldon is even more intelligent, with an IQ of 187. But he really lacks social skills and often finds it hard to interact with the "ordinary" people.



Penny, their next-door neighbor, is a waitress who dreams of being an actress. Leonard has a crush on her, but they just seem to be completely different people. So Penny starts to show the two geniuses what "real life" is all about.

I like this sitcom because it's hilarious. Every episode keeps me laughing nonstop. And many of the conversations in this sitcom are not only funny but also very witty. I have recommended it to many friends of mine.

1.4

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	主要的 main
情景喜剧 sitcom	主要的 main
影视剧中的人物 character	STA
加州理工 Callech (The California 校物理专业的排名全美	a Institute of Technology,美国的顶级牛校,去年该
物理学家 physicist	聪明的 intelligent
缺乏 lack	社会交往的技能 social skills
与沟通 communicate with	与交流 Interact with
梦想做某事 dream of doing sth.	
暗恋某人 have a crush on some 是标准的"土人")	one (如果不明白这个短语的意思在 Facebook 上就
天才 genius	超级搞笑的 hilarious

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

机智的 witty	(电视系列剧的)一集 an episode
不停地 non-stop	推荐 recommend
0 扩展词汇	
书呆子 nerd	电视系列剧 TV series
娱乐性很强的 entertaining	(电视系列剧的) 一季 a season
美国众神 American Gods	双峰 Twin Peaks
绝命毒师 Breaking Bad	
逍遥法外 How to Get Away with Mo	urder
罪恶黑名单 The Blacklist	实习生格蕾 Grey's Anatomy
权利的游戏 Game or Thrones	特工卡特 Agent Carter
纸牌屋 House of Cards	绝望主妇 Desperate Housewives
英雄 Heroes	绯闻女孩 Gossip Girl
女子监狱 Orange Is the New Black	
迷失 Lost	吸血鬼日记 Vampire Diaries
尼基塔 Nikita	办公室 The Office 了S
美少女的谎言 Pretty Little Liars	请参考Pat的思路
皮囊 Skins	梅林传奇 Merlin ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
时间充裕的同学还可以在这个网由 详情:www.imdb.com/chart/toptv/	上看到英美观众最喜爱的经典系列剧 的单词,思考 如果是您将会

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

《生活大爆炸》里的故事发生在加利福尼亚(California),它是以文化多样性(cultural diversity)而著称的一个州,所以我们在《生活大爆炸》第9季里也看到了 华裔演员 Melissa Tang 的身影。

[剑桥例句] Manchester is well-known for its cultural diversity.

🔄 Day 8_

☆ 喜欢的动漫采列剧之 海贼王

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about One Piece.

The main character of this <u>anime series</u>, Luffy, is the leader of the Straw Hat Pirates. He and his <u>crew</u> sail the seas in search of the <u>treasure</u> called "One Piece", which can help him become the next King of the Pirates.

Luffy is unstoppable not only because he can gain superhuman abilities by eating the "devil fruit", but also because his crew members are very helpful. Together, they defeat strong enemies such as Crocodile and Rob Lucci.

The action in *One Piece* is fast-paced and exciting. But *One Piece* is not just about fighting. It's also about friendship, teamwork and excition.

In other anime series, it's always like... the main character does everything. But in *One Piece*, the crew members, like Zoro, Sanji, Nami, Robin, Usopp and Chopper, are all COOL, which makes the team extremely powerful.

One Piece is a very long series, but it's not boring at all, because it really makes me think and inspires me a lot. That's why I'm a huge fan of OP.

轮到你了		t's Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
影视剧里的人物 character	日本动漫 anime	
日本漫画 manga	系列剧 series	
船员(或者机组成员) 的统称	crew members	
海盗 pirate	在海面上长时间地航行 (固定短语)	sail the seas

MB HERE



IELTS SPEAKING TEST

超人类的能力 superhuman abilities	恶魔果实 devil fruit mendel
打败 defeat	敌人 enemy
快节奏的 fast-paced	强大的 powerful
友情 friendship	团队合作 teamwork
志向,抱负 ambition	激励 inspire
② 扩展词汇	
正面人物 hero (复数: heroes)	"反派" villain (复数: villains)
尾田栄一郎 Elichiro Oda	创作者 creator
妖精的尾巴 Fairy Tail	家庭教师 (Hitman) Rebornt
通灵王 Shaman Nice	
七龙珠 Dragon Ball Z (在英美有时被命	简称为 DBZ) 请参考Pat的思路
火影忍者 Naruto	银魂 Gin Tama ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
周刊少年 Jump Weekly Shonen Jump	11 26 20 10 44
犬夜叉 InuYasha	叛逆的鲁鲁修 Code Geass 怎么说
您还可以在这个网址看到对很多经典 Storyline 部分会对你很有帮助: www.im	电日本动漫的详细介绍,特别是每个介绍里的 db. com/list/Is054666938

5. 电影



Day 8_

☆ 童年时看过的电影之 狮子王

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I first watched The Lion King as a young child, and then watched it again several times over the years.

This animated film is about a lion prince named Simba, whose uncle kills Simba's father and makes himself the ruler. But Simba is held responsible for the death of his father. So he runs away out of guilt.

Many years later, Simba is told that the kingdom is in serious trouble. So he faces up to the challenge and returns. With the help of his friends, he mats his uncle and saves the kingdom.

I like this film because most of the characters are very cute, and the soundtrack to the film is

amazing. I particularly like the song " Can You Feel the Love Tonight. " by Elton John.

The film also teaches valuable life lessons. For example, it teaches us that running away doesn't solve any problems. It also shows us the power of courage and friendship.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
动画片 animated film / animation	王子 prince
统治者 ruler	让某人负责任 hold sb. responsible
因为愧疚而躲开 run away out of guilt	王国 kingdom



leisure

勇敢地面对挑战 face up to the challenge	打败 defeat
电影原声专辑 soundtrack	尤其喜欢 particularly like
宝贵的 valuable	勇气 courage
友情 friendship	
② 扩展词汇	
剧情 plot / storyline	小狮子(小老虎、小熊等) cub
票房成功的电影,上座率很高的电影 a box	office hit / a box office smash
小小兵武小黄人儿" Minions	功夫熊猫 Kung Fu Panda
很励志的 1000000000000000000000000000000000000	续集 sequel
冰川时代 Ice Age	蓝精灵 Smurfs
格格巫 Gargamel 灰姑娘 Cinderella	阿兹猫 cat Azrael
灰姑娘 Cinderella	童话 fairytale
不能只看外表,不能以貌取人 Don't judge	a they by its cover.
三维立体电影 a 3-D (它的读音就是 three-D 无论你是想了解怎样用英文描述剧情,还	,并适当借鉴
电影的评论,这个"电影大全"都必不可少:	的 平词, 忠考

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

美版的卡通片 (animation) 与日版的卡通片 (anime) 不同,美版不论故事情 节是什么,一定会有一两个可爱的卡通形象出现在电影里,但日系的则不一定。"可 爱的"除了 cute 之外, adorable 也是 native speakers 形容小朋友、小动物或者卡通 人物很可爱的一个常用词。

[剑桥例句] Theo is an absolutely adorable child.



介稿笑电影之 失恋33天

文章和白百合先后爆出绯闻 (affair), 让人感叹虚构和现实之间的距离 (the distance between fiction and reality)。但是从演技来看,两个人"很有 CP 感" (look like a real couple),而且这部电影确实把搞笑和浪漫结合得很完美 (a perfect combination of humour and romance)。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案



I'm going to talk about *Love Is Not Blind*. It's a well-acted and well-directed romantic comedy.



It tells the story of Huang Xiao-xian, a wedding planner who finds out that her boyfriend has cheated on her. She's deeply hurt by that and she starts keeping a diary about the painful experience.

One other gleagues, Wang Xiao-jian,

has a crush on her but is often laughed at by her. Still, he helps her recover from the painful breakup, and finally wins her heart.

I enjoyed this film because the acting was good, and the story was very moving. At the same time, there were some really funny conversations between the characters. I enjoyed the film also because it reminded me of a famous saying, "Love is not blind — it just helps someone see things that others fail to see."

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
表演得很精彩的 well-acted	导演得很出色的 well-directed
演技 acting	剧情 plot / storyline
情感喜剧 romantic cornedy	出轨 cheat on someone

写日记 keep a diary	同事 colleague
暗恋某人 has a crush on someone	从当中恢复过来 recover from
分手 breakup	感人的 moving
非常搞笑的 hilarious	对话 conversation
让我想起······ remind me of	
「「「「「「「」」	
取材自一个真实的故事 is based on a tr	ue story
改编自同名小说 is adapted from a nove	el of the same name
网络小说 novel / online novel	是由扮演的 played by
由执导 direct the	拍摄得很美的 beautifully-shot
视觉上令人震撼的 is vission in the second	
情节跌宕起伏的 full of twists and	
有一个令人意想不到的结尾 has a surpr	ising eoging
角色 part / role	前男(女)友或者前任配偶 ex
剪刘海儿 trim someone's fringe (BrE),	/ trim bangs (American American Americ
小成本电影 small-budget film	巨大的票房成功 a huge box-office hit
(影视作品或者音乐作品) 非常受欢迎的	well-received / well-liked
受到很高的评价 receive great reviews	在(某一天)放映 was screened on
单身人士 singles	引起的共鸣 resonate with
《嫌疑人 X 的献身》 The Devotion of St	ispect X
《左耳》 The Left Ear	《匆匆那年》 Fleet of Time
《那些年,我们一起追的女孩》 You Are	the Apple of My Eye
半自传体小说 semi-autobiography	搞笑片 comedy / funny movie

ODay 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

超级搞笑的 hilarious	爱情喜剧 romantic comedy
动作片 action film	充满紧张的动作场面 full of action scenes
特效 special effects	看起来很真实的 realistic
娱乐性很强的 entertaining	历史片 historical drama
穿越剧 time-travel drama	战争片 war film
传记片 biopic	纪录片 documentary
自然纪录片 nature documentary,	例如:《我们诞生在中国》(Born in China)
自然栖息地 natural habitat	野生生物 wildlife
很有知识性的 eo Stal	励志的 inspiring
令人难忘的 unforgettable 为 。	科幻片 sci-fi film
奇幻电影(像 Harry Potter 和 The Le	科幻片 sci-fi film prof of the Rings 那种) fantasy movie 悬念片 (uspense film g 形容词形式)
恐怖片 horror film	悬念片 spense film
很有悬念的结尾 a cliffhanger endir	
贺岁片 New Year celebration film	TIFIFI,
很有喜庆气氛的 festive (festival 的	形容词形式)
电影的预告短片 trailer	
强大的演员阵容 a strong cast (ca	st 就是"演员阵容") 请参考Pat的思路
Pat 的英美朋友们最喜欢的电影i com/top/ , 您可以在这里找到各种身	 平论网站就是 www.rottentomatoes. ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

在这个连影视作品也追求快节奏的年代里,虽然有一些电影的故事情节很出色 (an outstanding storyline),但也有更多电影的故事情节是很"俗套的"(corny)。"剧情很俗套的"用地道英文的说法就是: The storyline is corny.

6. 歌曲之 加州明信片

Describe a song or a piece of music you like.

You should say:

what the song or piece of music is called

when you first heard it

where you first heard it



and explain why you like it.



I'm going to talk about a song I like, called *Picture Postcards from LA*. I first heard this song at a friend's home last month. Of course, LA stands for Los Angeles, the city where Hollywood is.

The lyrics of this song are about the singer nimself and a waitress named Rachael. Rachael always dreams of becoming a superstar in Hollywood. And she often tells the singer about her dream. The singer is always like, " Sure, so send me picture postcards from LA."

I like this song because it's about ordinary people and their simple lives. Both of them know this dream probably will never come true, but they're still happy and



hopeful about the future. So it's a moving story.

I like this song also because the singer, Joshua Kadison, has a unique voice — a very deep and rich voice. The music of this song also makes me feel very calm and relaxed.

0	D	а	V	8
			1	

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

轮到你了		lt's Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
是的缩写 stand for	洛杉矶 Los Angeles	
餐馆的女服务生 waitress	歌词 lyrics	
[剑桥例句] The lyrics of this song an	re very moving.	
······说 he's like,"…" / she's like 很常用)	"…"(在英美日常生活里的	转述某人的话时
普通人 ordinary people	感人的 moving	
独特的 unique	低沉浑厚的嗓音 a deep and	rich voice
普通人 ordinary people 独特的 unique の が展词汇		
给人印象深刻的,很容易记住的 🔌	aemorable	
很励志的 inspiring	舒缓的 soothing	
很有活力的 lively and energetic	• 24	
很有激情的 is full of passion	很有表现力的 very	e
(歌词) 寓意丰富的 Very meaningfu	endigend in planning in the second	,并适当借鉴
(歌词) 简单明了的 simple and stre	lightforward	这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
节拍 tempo	旋律 thythm	如果是您将会怎么说
纯净自然的声音 a pure and natural		
喜欢英美音乐的朋友只要在这个F 这个单词,就能够找到相关的乐评了:		的歌名和 review
Part 2 有时还会偷偷地把上面这 child. 这个网站提供了世界各地的大力 China 就可以看到中国的儿歌了,从	量儿歌: www. mamalisa. com,	您按照国家找到

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Pat 有时会在线收听来自国内的音乐节目。现在很流行说一位歌手的表演 (performance) 很"给力",那么用地道英文怎么表达呢? native speakers 会说: It's phenomenal. (phenomenal /fə'nominl/ 这个词貌似很书面,其实在当代英美日 常口语里的使用已经相当普及)。另外,国内影视圈最近流行说的"现象级电视节 目",其实就是 a phenomenal TV show 的对应表达。

7. 广告



Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about an interesting commercial I saw on TV last weekend.

It was like ... a man rushes to the airport, hops on a plane and flies to another city for a job interview.



After arriving at an office building, he gets into a lift and goes up to the 20th floor, looking very nervous. He looks down at his shoes, only to notice that they don't match each other. But he goes in for the interview anyway.

The man looks sad after the interview. But all of

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

a sudden, his mobile phone rings — he gets the job. He's so excited that he jumps into the air. Then the narrator says calmly, "Converse can always take you there."

This TV commercial was interesting because it was very creative, and the message was clear and powerful.



Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果要说某个广告是"针对"某类人的,地道英文里会用 is aimed at 这个短语。

[剑桥例句] This fast-food commercial is aimed at children.

8. 自己喜欢的网站

Describe your favourite website.

You should say:

which website it is

how often you visited this website

E THE STATE

whether it's popular or not

and explain why you like it.

每个人喜爱的网站并不一样,但好消息是: native speakers 在描述网站时常用的词汇 和短语却相当集中,完全可以在短时间内快速掌握。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

My favourite website is Yahoo.com. I'm sure you've heard a lot about it because it's one of the most popular websites in the world. I visit it every day, and I have its app on my mobile phone.

I like this website because it's very informative and entertaining. It provides a wide variety of information, like the latest world news, business updates and reports about important sports events. It also offers



the latest entertainment stories, you know, news stories about film stars, TV celebrities and famous singers.

This website also has a Question-and-Answer (Q & A) section. It's like an online community where people ask questions and interact with each other. Lots of people go there to ask questions. They usually get answers very quickly. And it seems most of the answers are detailed and helpful.

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Another reason I like this website is that its layout is clear and well-organised. It's user-friendly and always easy to navigate.

I like this website also because its founders, Jerry Yang and David Filo, started the website when they were just 24. Their success has inspired many young people to create new ideas and start their own businesses. So the website is not only informative but also inspiring.

轮到你了		It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank		
应用程序 app	信息量很大的 informative	
娱乐性很强的 entertaining	最新发生的 latest	
消息的更新 update	报导	
名人 celebrities	问答部分 Q & Alection	2 - 4 - 22
网络社区 online community	地守 rep 问答部分 Q & Asection 互动 interact 网站内容的布局 website layout 井井有条的 well-organised	
详细的,具体的 detailed	网站内容的布局 website layout	15 To
网页 webpage	井井有条的 well-organised	1949 (A)
很方便使用的,"用户友好的"		
(网站的)导航很明确,内容很低	更于查找 is easy to navigate	
创建者 founder	激励(动词) inspire	
励志的(形容词) inspiring	创造出新的想法 create new idea	as
0 扩展词汇		
点击率 hits	网络购物 online shopping	
购物网站 shopping website		0
社交网站 social networking we	bsite (例如: Facebook 和 Twitter)	请参考Pat的思路,并适当借鉴
视频共享网站 video-sharing w	ebsite (例如:YouTube 和 Youku)	这个词汇表里 的单词,思考
图片共享网站 photo-sharing w	ebsite (例如: Instagram)	如果是您将会怎么说

请求加好友 send a friend request	用户的注册信息 profile
个人信息 personal information	盗用用户名 ID theft
微博 micro-blog	名人之间的骂战 celebrity spat
关注某人 follow sb.	对某人取消关注,"取关" unfollow sb.
"僵尸粉" "zombie followers"	网络论坛 online forum
聊天室 chatroom	分享想法和观点 share ideas and opinions
结识新朋友 make new friends	楼主 OP
帖子 post	and any south and the
已经被转帖了很多次 has been reposte	ed many times
获得很多个 "赞" get many "likes"	
在网上疯传 go viral (它是最近几年在	
上传 upload	下载 download
安装 install	20
收藏一个网站的网址 bookmark a site	(英美口语里也常把 website 简称为 site)
热门词 buzzword	虚拟的世界 vie virtual world
沉迷于 be addicted to	STAR O
著名的消费者报告 (Consumer Re	enorts) 杂志的这个网业会 ,并适当借鉴
	这个两儿衣王
让你对于网络购物有更深入的了解: w	ww. consumerreports. org/ 的单词, 思考 如果是您将会
cro/shopping-websites/buying-guide.	htm 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

谁都知道网站叫 website, 可"网络公司"的英文是……? 除了可以说 Internet company 之外, dotcom 也是地道英文里对网络公司的一种常用称呼。

[剑桥例句] A survey found that 20 of the top 150 European dotcoms could run out of cash within a year.

💶 🗠 Day 8_

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

9. 故事

☆ 童年时听过的故事之三只小猪

Describe a story you heard as a child.

You should say:

who first told you this story

whether you heard it again later

what the story was about

and explain why you still remember this story.

关注院在



难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about one of my favourite childhood stories, called *The Three Little Pigs.* I first heard the story from my grandpa, and I also heard it from some other relatives.



The story goes like this upon a time there were three little pigs. They moved to a new village and built their own houses.

The first little pig built a straw house because that was easy. But the house was not strong at all. The second little pig built a

stick house for himself. He didn't spend much time on it, and the house was not strong either. The third little pig was hardworking. He built a brick house. It took him a lot of time, and the house was very strong.

Then a wolf came along and blew down the first pig's straw house. The pig ran to the stick house. Then the wolf also blew down the stick house and chased the two pigs to the brick house.

The brick house was very strong. The wolf couldn't blow it down. He then tried to enter the house through the chimney and got killed in a pot of boiling water. And

the three little pigs lived happily ever after

I still remember this story because it's interesting and meaningful. It teaches us to hope for the best but prepare for the worst. It also teaches us that hard work always pays off

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
在很久很久以前 Once upon a time	9
	lly ever after (经典英文童话的最常用开头和结尾, 们全都会背)
亲戚	稻草屋 straw house
木棍搭成的屋子 ck house	用砖盖成的屋子 brick house
吹倒 blow down	追赶,追逐 chase
烟囱 chimney	沸水 boiling water
② 扩展词汇	
寓言 fable	伊索寓言 Assor's Fables
童话 fairytale	伊索寓言 Figures Fables
白雪公主和七个小矮人 Snow White	
灰姑娘 Cinderella	皇帝的新装 The Emperor's New Clothes
美人鱼 The Little Mermaid	丑小鸭 The Ugly Duckling
安徒生 Hans Christian Andersen	孙悟空 The Monkey King
忠诚的 loyal	打妖精 fight against demons
童话故事的"寓意"英文怎么讨 moral 是名词。	持用 moral 这个词。注意:作"寓意"的意思时
[剑桥例句] The moral of the s best policy.	tory is that honesty is always the 请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
如果您还对其他儿童故事有兴趣 lit2go/68/fairy-tales-and-other-tradition	,可以看看这个网站:etc.usf.edu/ 的单词,思考

_o Day 8

10. 喜欢的外国文化

Describe a foreign culture you're interested in.

You should say:

which culture it is

how you learned about this culture

what you know about this culture



and explain why you feel this culture is interesting.

很多中国同学对这道题感到恐惧,因为 culture 是一个比较抽象的概念。但如果你理 解考官的期待其实只是——九题、清晰、并适当含有细节的答案,就完全可以通过简洁的 语言和适当举例来描述清楚一种外国文化。绝不要听起来活像是一位"异域文化权威" · #AFIELTS TE (如果你都已经深谙外国文化,那还何必非要拼尽全力考雅思出国呢?)。请牢记:IELTS 考官真正关注的是——你的英语能力。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about British culture.

I learn about British culture mostly from newspapers, magazines and television. And I have some online friends from the UK, who often share their ideas about their culture with me.

The first thing that comes to mind when I think about British culture is the historic buildings . There're many world-famous historic buildings in Britain, like Buckingham Palace and the British Museum. I really hope I can visit them someday.

I'm also very interested in British literature. So many good novels were written by British writers, such as Pride and Prejudice, Robinson Crusoe, and of course, Harry Potter.

Some of my favourite bands are also from the UK, like Coldplay and One

Direction. It seems there're many musically-talented people there. I also know that a lot of people in the UK like football, and I'm a big fan of Manchester United.

I'm interested in British culture because it's very different from Chinese culture. For example, **Easter** is an important festival in the UK, but not many people in China celebrate Easter. Another interesting difference is British people drive on the left side of the road, but we drive on the right side of the road.

I'm interested in British culture also because a good understanding of British culture can really help me improve my English skills. So I always want to learn more about it.



Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



来听一听 TED 嘉宾们关于文化的长篇探讨:www.ted.com/topics/world+cultures

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

说起英国人,中国同学们往往会想到"彬彬有礼"这个词。尽管这个词并不适 合所有的英国人,但总体而言还是比较准确的。英文短语 polite and well-mannered 就等于中文"彬彬有礼的"。

[剑桥例句] He's polite and well mannered, and pleasant to hang out with.

Time to Branch Out.

推而广之

Describe a foreign country you wish to travel to.

补充弹药

	,
by air 乘飞机	<i>y</i>
travel half way around the globe 到地球的另一侧	Extra
	Ammo
No.	
11. 一件艺术品之 雕塑	
18 se	
Describe a sculpture.	
You should say	
where you can the addition	
where you saw the sculpture	
what kind of sculpture it was	
what it looked like	
and explain whether you liked it or not.	

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a sculpture I saw at a sculpture exhibition last month. The theme of the exhibition was "The Environment".

It was an abstract sculpture dealing with the subject of environmental pollution. It



🗲 Day 8

looked a bit like a person sitting in a relaxed pose.

The sculpture looked calm and peaceful from a distance. But as I moved closer to it, I noticed it had cracks all over it. These cracks made the beautiful sculpture look ugly and made me feel uncomfortable.

Some working drawings for this sculpture were also on display, which I found helpful. They showed that the ugly cracks were actually designed by the artist to represent the terrible damage that pollution caused to the environment.

I liked this sculpture because it was very meaningful. And although it was an abstract sculpture, its message was strong and clear. I liked it also because it was made from recycled materials which were very eco-friendly.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
展览 exhibition	主题 theme
抽象雕塑 abstract sculpture	A.B.
(艺术品) 是关于某一主题的 deal with the	subject of Figure,
摆出很放松的姿态,摆出很放松的"pose"	subject of FIFELTS
平静安详的 calm and peaceful	从远处 from a distance 🔗
裂缝 cracks	布满······ all over
雕塑家画的草图,设计雕塑用的草图 workin	g drawings
展示 on display	设计 design
象征着 represent / symbolise	寓意深刻的 meaningful
雕塑要表达的信息 message	循环使用的材料 recycled materials
有益于环保的 eco-friendly	
2 扩展词汇	
观赏雕塑 view the sculptures	雕塑家 sculptor

标题 title	具象的雕塑 realistic sculptures
看起来很逼真的 is true to life	空间 space and a second
细节 detail	石膏 plaster
粘土 clay	石头 stone
光滑的 smooth	粗糙的 rough 是这些一个的中国中国的中国
直的 straight	弯曲的 curved
优雅的 elegant	很有创意的 creative and creative company of the creative company of the creative company of the comp
轰动效应 shock value	请参考Pat的思路 探索 explore ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
美术馆, 画廊 art gallery 花园 garden	参观者 visitors 的单词,思考如果是您将会怎么说
Part 2 有时也会考查关于 painting 的 i	舌题,这个网址可以帮助您了解很多世界名画

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

的海外生活英语实录 有很多雕塑是用金属制作的,例如 bronze sculptures (用青铜制作的雕塑), stainless steel sculptures (用不锈钢制作的雕塑) 等。如果不想记那么多,也可以 把所有用金属制作的雕塑统称为 metal sculptures。

[剑桥例句] We enjoyed viewing the metal sculptures in the park.

☆ 绘画 (双语感悟) Bilingual Reflections

我们在 p. 92 讨论过的跟绘画有关的词汇和短语当然还可以继续用,同时可以进一步 学习:

英美的 paintings 主要分成三种:风景画 (landscape painting)、静物画 (still life painting)和人像 (portrait)。自画像叫 self-portrait,中国的水墨画我会把它叫作 Chinese ink painting,

画面的构图叫 composition, 光线叫 lighting, 笔触叫作 brush strokes, 画布叫

💪 Day 8.

canvas, 画框叫 frame, 画室是 a painter's studio, 而画廊当然就是 gallery 了。

一幅"杰作"叫 a masterpiece。具象画叫 realistic painting,而抽象画是 abstract painting。美术欣赏课在英文里叫作 art appreciation classes。

如果画的颜色很浓,说 It has intense colours. 如果画面的颜色很鲜明,叫 It has bright, vivid colours.

全世界最有名的一幅画肯定是 *Mona Lisa*。它是一幅半身像(a half-length portrait), 是大约 500 年前由达芬奇创作的(It was painted by Leonardo da Vinci about 500 years ago.)。Now it hangs in the Louvre(挂在卢浮宫里) and attracts art lovers from around the world(吸引着来自于世界各地的艺术爱好者们).

这幅画最有名的特点就是 Mona Lisa 神秘的微笑 (The most famous feature of this painting is Mona Lisa's mysterious smile.)。有的人觉得这幅画很真实 (realistic), 但是 也有人认为她的微笑太梦幻了 (a dreamy smile)。但是不管怎样,这幅画一定会在你的 心里激发强烈的感受 (It inspire strong feelings.)。

N E 物质诱惑

Pat 解题 Pat's Thought

本节我们会学到很多描述物品的地道词汇和短语。

谁都知道服装的拼写是 clothes, 但却有很多同学不 知道它的正确发音应该是 /klauðz/ √, 而不是 /klauðiz/X,因为 clothes 里面的 e 不发音。而人身上 戴的配饰在地道英文里则叫 accessories, 比如 earrings (耳环), bracelet (手镯), wristband (腕带) 等。



在本节里我们还会学到很多 electronic devices。地 道英文里还有一个很棒的名词专门指电子的小东西,叫作 gadget,考试的时候如果遇到电 子产品话题不妨用1~2次。

当然我们还会学习更大型的 objects, 比如 cars。Pat 的学生当中车迷 (car buff) 从 来都不少,咱们可以看两种这辈子还能买得起的车型。

handicrafts (手工制作) 一直是个难点、我们在本节也要突破。

一口气谈了这么多的 objects,希望我们不会变得, materialistic (过于物质化)!

本类话题最有代表性的方向 Typical Topics

- * Describe a vehicle.
- * Describe a photo.
- * Describe something that was made by yourself.
- Describe a childhood toy.
- Describe a gift you received.


展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Map

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案,那么下面的 思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



Pat 发现国内的男同学们只要提起真正适合"男僧"开的车就立刻想到"悍马" (Hummer),可在全球都"Go green."的年代里,像 Hummer 这样的"油老虎"(gasguzzler) 在英美年轻人当中其实已经很少有人向往了。去年在美国和加拿大进行的一项 最新调查显示, Subaru Forester 拥有很多受过良好教育(well-educated)的男性车主 (male car owners),而且它的左右对称全时四轮驱动(symmetrical all wheel drive)也 正在悄悄改变着英美传统观念中的"猛男"形象。

当然,只要英语地道,你说什么车型考官都会欣然接受,因为考官真正关心的问题只 是你有没有能力用地道的英文给出一个扣题、清晰、自然的答案。

难度指数 ★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to describe a car I'd like to own, which is a Subaru Forester.

The outside of the car looks sporty and attractive, and the build quality feels good.

The inside is spacious and caetical. The headroom and legroom are perfect for me, and there's a lot of cargo room in the back. The handling of the car is also very good.

I'd like to own a Forester because it looks nice and it's fun to drive. It also has



comfortable seats and plenty of cargo space. But it costs much less than a luxury SUV like a BMW X3 or an Audi Q5. So it's good value for money.

I test-drove a Forester last week and was very impressed with it. I'm pretty sure I'll buy one later this year or sometime next year.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
有运动感的 sporty	有吸引力的 attractive

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



Object

Keep it natural.

二手车的售出价格 resale value (有些人把"老外"全想象成富翁,其实在英美"负 翁"也不少,开二手车甚至五、六手车的励志哥们也不在少数)

您可以在这个网站看到所有英国常见车型的详细介绍(页面左上角 Choose a make 里面的 make 是名词, 指车的品牌, model 则是指车的具体型号): www. autocar. co. uk/car-reviews

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果要说车或者其他物品"定价合理的",地道英文里常用合成词 reasonablypriced

[剑桥例句] The car is fun to drive and reasonably-priced.

☆ 交通工具之 Cooper

Pat 发现国内的女同学们在说这道题时也总爱抛出一堆超级难词,彪悍程度已经不亚 于一些猛男。"女汉子们"真应该试试用简单但是地道的英文更加清晰地描述这个话题。 MEISTEL TS THE

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案



I'd really like to buy a Mini Cooper. A friend of mine bought a Mini Cooper last month. It cost her around 250,000 yuan. But I would say it looks like a 500,000 yuan car. (在真实的英文谈话里像 I would say...这类小短语特别多,其实并不是真就 "非说不可",但说了就更像是人与人之间的交谈,而不再是机器与机器之间的互殴)



The car looks very cute, like a chubby baby because it looks solid and compact. The inside is actually pretty spacious. The front seats feel very comfortable, and there's plenty of headroom. The back seats are a bit small, but I guess they would be large enough for children.

💶 Day 8_

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

The car is well-equipped. I particularly like the backup camera because it makes parking easier and safer. The speakers also sound very impressive.

Unlike Beetles, Mini has a powerful engine. It's also fuel-efficient. That's really good news when the petrol price is still very high.

I'm sure I'll buy a Mini Cooper too because it's so fun and comfortable to drive, and it offers good value for money.





Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Pat 在新泽西的加油站加油时每次都会听到不堪汽油涨价之苦的哥们儿骂上几句。应该怎样用地道的英文来说一辆车"很费油"?地道英文里常用 It's a gasguzzler (发音/gæs'gʌzlə/).来表达对喝油无极限的"油老虎"的无奈。

[剑桥例句] Gas-guzzlers are expensive to drive because they use more fuel.

💶 Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

2. 电子产品

Describe something electronic that you use often. You should say: what it is where you bought it what you use it for and explain why you like it. ☆电子产品之 iPhooe Photo A



Pat 指南 / 工 b

"安卓粉"也不必 complain,因为您不但可以借鉴这个答案的 ideas 和 words and phrases,而且还可以在"扩展词汇"里看到对描述安卓手机很有用的地道词汇和短语 😳 ELTSTA

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to describe my iPhone 7. I waited in line outside our local Apple store for hours to buy it. It's really worth the waiting !

I've used many smartphones. My iPhone 7 is definitely the best. It's thin and light, and the Retina HD display is sharp and clear.

I use it to browse the Web, play music and games, and take pictures. The image quality of the 12-megapixel camera is amazing.

And of course, I use it for phone calls and text messages. The call quality is pretty good. Sometimes I also use the maps on my phone to get directions.



I like my iPhone 7 because it's fun to use and looks great. It's also very easy to carry. It helps me keep in touch with family and friends.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
电子用品 electronic device / electronic	ronic gadget (后面这个数码迷们更爱用)
排队 wait in line	确实值得等这么久 It's really worth the waiting.
智能手机 smartphone	很薄而且很轻的 thin and light
"视网膜"高清显示屏 Retina HD c	lisplay
(显示效果)锐利清晰的 sharp and	d clear
上网 browse the Web / surf the In	ternet
(相机的) 成像质量 image quality	百万像素 megapixel
短信 text messages 通话质量	call quality 确定行进路线 get directions
和亲友们保持联系 keep in touch	with and friends / stay connected with
family and frie	ends
2 扩展词汇	et TS
无线耳机 wireless headphones	立体声扩音器 stereo speakes
做工精美的 well-built	便于携带的 portable
非常漂亮的 gorgeous	很时尚的 stylish
触摸屏 touch screen	铃声 ring tone
令人愉快的 pleasant	屏幕 screen / display
高分辨率的 HD / high-definition	(色彩)鲜明的 vivid
(色彩) 准确的 accurate	内置相机 built-in camera
存储容量 storage capacity	接听电话的效果 reception quality
电池充一次电之后的使用时间 batte	ery life(不要只看字面误解为电池的终生寿命)

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



喜欢数码产品的朋友必须经常登录这个网站,因为它不仅对备考 Part 2 有帮助,更是数码爱好者们的乐园:www.engadget.com/reviews/ cellphones

青参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

Time to Branch Out. 推而广之

Describe a gift you received.

Describe something that you lost.

Keep it natural.

补充弹药

a thoughtful gift 很"贴心"	的礼物 precious	珍贵的
It's the thought that counts.	(固定习语) 最重要的	是心意。
brings back fond memories	唤起美好的回忆	
looked high and low for	到处找	xtra
upset 心烦的,"很郁闷的"	regret doi	ing sth. 后悔做某事 Am

☆ 电子产品之 iPad Air



在英美生活过的人都知道: Apple 在当地大学生当中确实拥有相当高的忠诚度 (enjoys such a high level of loyalty among university students)。每次做集体 presentation 的时候,放眼望去尽是一个个闪亮的 Mac 大白苹果。很多英美年轻人虽然躺 在沙发上用 iPad 的时候经常砸到鼻子或者门牙,可还是痴心不改 (They're hooked on Apple's stuff.)。

Pat 并不关心您是一个"果粉" (an Apple fan) 还是一个"果黑" (an Apple detractor)。我只想向您证明:只要思路清晰、扣题,即使是像电子产品这样的"技术性卡片"也同样可以用浅显易懂的英文来清楚地描述。

难度指数 ★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案



I'm going to talk about my iPad Air. I bought it from the Apple online store.

It's very thin and light. I can easily carry it with just one hand. I guess that's why



it's called iPad "Air".

The screen looks sharp and clear. Colours are bright and vivid. And I have to say the iSight camera is almost too good for a tablet. The image quality is amazing, and it can also record HD videos. Day 8_

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

What else? The battery life... I can spend a whole afternoon on my iPad Air and still don't need to recharge the battery. So the battery life is pretty good.

I use my iPad to send and receive emails, watch films, read e-books and play games. I also often use it to take pictures and record videos. It's always easy to carry and fun to use.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.	
▶ Word Bank		
网店 online store 资本	很薄而且很轻的 thin and light	
(屏幕的显示效果) 锐利清晰的 sharp a	and clear	
(色彩)鲜明的 vivid	(相机的) 成像质量 image quality	
拍摄高清晰的视频 record HD videos		
一次充电之后能够使用的时间 battery li	fe(注意:不要误解成"电池寿命")	
看电子书 read e-books	拍视频 record videos	
2 扩展词汇	fe (注意: 不要误解成"电池寿命") 拍视频 record Tideos	
使用安卓系统的平板电脑 Android table	et / Android-based tablet	
可靠耐用的 reliable	the second s	
便于携带的 portable (反义词: bulky /	balki/笨重的,不方便携带的)	
存储容量 storage capacity	笔记本电脑 laptop	
操作系统 operating system (例如 Windows 和 Mac)		
处理器 processor		
上网 browse the Web / surf the Internet	et, so a construction de sub-la des d'Ale	
电子游戏机 game console (在英美家) Xbox One 和 Nintendo 3DS	庭玩得比较多的是 Wii ∕wit∕,PlayStation Vita, 6)	
数码相机 digital camera	可以轻松地放进口袋的 pocket-sized	
触摸屏 touch screen	光学变焦 optical zoom	
数码变焦 digital zoom	感光器 sensor	



☆照片之 与人合影

Describe a photo that you like. You should say: what the photo is when it was taken where it was taken and explain why you like it.



IELTS SPEAKING TEST

- Day 8

Pat 指南

有很多同学喜欢 Ed Sheeran 的那首 Photograph,但却觉得这道题即使用中文说也绝 难说到1'30"以上,而且即使勉强说了一点也会很生硬 (unnatural)。

确实,即使让考生用自己的母语描述一张 photo 都会很难,因为照片是平面的(twodimensional),就算放大之后也就只有那么大,只能从照片的一个 corner 描述到另一个 corner。但题目里明确问了 when, where, why 等问题, 所以适当谈谈拍照的经过和自己 的感受不仅是扣题的,而且也是考官期待的。

比如描述过春节时全家人一起拍的一张照片,和父母一起度假时在一个旅游景点拍的 一张照片,参加大个朋友的婚礼时与新娘(bride)和新郎(groom)一起拍的照片,参 加某个考试拿到成绩之后的一张自拍(selfie)等等,都可以自然、扣题地谈出一些照片 之外的内容。如果说拍到了一个名人 (celebrity) 的照片也不错, 因为还可以合理合法地 把这个名人描述2~3句(但不要太多Less is more.)。 WIE S'ALE .

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a photo I like. It was taken last month while I was at the Hong Kong airport, waiting for my flight.

It was like ... I was chatting with some friends. All of sudden, I noticed a man who looked exactly like ... (the celebrity's name).



... is ... (这里可以自然地加入 2~3 句介绍这个 celebrity 的内容,不要长,注意这部分可以用现在时)

So I became curious. I went up to him and asked if he was ... He smiled politely and nodded. I was so excited because I'd never thought I could meet him in real life.

I told him I really liked his films (or songs, music videos, TV shows). I also took out my mobile phone and asked him if I could take a selfie with him.

He was like, " Sure!" Then he smiled and posed

Keep it natural.

for the picture. He even said "cheese" !

After I returned home, I printed out the picture and hung it on my living room wall, and I've shown it to many friends.

I like the picture because it reminds me of a very exciting experience. I'd never thought such a famous person could be so friendly and approachable.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	Line is in the Cult
机场 airport	航班 flight
聊天 金	突然间 all of a sudden
好奇的 Curious	很礼貌地微笑 smile politely
点头 nod	拍自拍照 take a selfie
摆姿势 pose	
说"茄子" say "cheese"(中	文照相说"茄子",英文照相说 cheese "奶酪")
	把它挂在上面hang(过去时 hung)it on…
让我想起····· remind me of	平易近人的 approachable
0 扩展词汇	TS T
把照片放在像框里 get the pict	ure framed
很值得回忆的经历 a memorab	le experience
令人愉快的经历 an enjoyable	experience
家庭照片 family photo	集体的合影 group photo
(某个人或某个事物)让我一整天	天都很开心 really made my day!
编辑照片 edit the photo	图片编辑应用程序 photo-editing app
这个网址不仅含有很多与拍 "实用自拍指南":www.wikihow	照有关的地道词汇和短语,而且也是 ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

🚄 🖉 Day 8 -

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

说一个人"很上镜",不能说 very good on a camera,而要说 He's /She's very photogenic. (/ifəutəu'dʒenik /)。而说一个人"不喜欢照相",在地道英文里则要说 He's / She's camera-shy. (面对镜头害羞)

[剑桥例句] Chloe is very photogenic. She has the type of face that looks attractive in a photo.



4. 手工制作 (handicraft)

☆ 手工制作之 风筝



Keep it natural.

why you made it

how you made it

and explain whether you still have it today.

Pat 指南 / C)

北京给 Pat 印象最深的是什么? 不是 the Forbidden City,也不是 the courtyard houses,更不是 Peking Roast Duck,而是晴天时北京天空上的风筝,那么自由,那么悠闲(carefree)。世界各地的城市我去了很多,但就是没有一个城市的人会像北京人这么爱放风筝,这是简单的快乐(the simple pleasures of life)。上课练习的时候,Pat 让很多孩子描述 making a kite,但怎么听都是像在背百科辞典(encyclopedia)。真想试试能不能用简单、清晰的英语来把这个过程说清楚。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about a simple kite I made for my cousin last week. As I'd never made a kite before, I thought it would be hard. But it turned out that making a kite was actually easy and fun.

I decided on the shape of the kite first. It seemed to me that making a square kite would



take less time. A square kite would also be easier for my cousin to carry.

So I went to an arts and crafts shop near my home and got a piece of coloured paper and two long plastic sticks.

I took them home and drew a large square on the paper with a pencil. And I asked my cousin to cut out the shape with scissors.

Then I tied the plastic sticks together with a piece of string to make a "T" shape. This would be the frame of the kite.

After that, I glued the paper square to the frame. I also attached the flying line

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

- Day 8 —

to the kite, and it was ready for its first flight.

We went to a park to fly it. The wind was pretty strong, so the kite went straight up and soared into the sky. Our hard work really paid off.

My cousin took the kite home. He really liked the kite, but I have no idea where it is now. Maybe he still keeps it at home, or maybe he's thrown it away. He's just an 8-year-old child, anyway...

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
表弟/表妹/表姐/表哥 cousing	没想到却是 It turned out that
在方面做出选择 decide on	正方形 square
卖美术和手工用品的商店 arts and crafts sho	彩纸 coloured paper
塑料棍 plastic stick	画 draw (过去时: drew)
铅笔 pencil	剪出(某个图形), cut out
剪刀 scissors	把绑到一起 ties together
线绳 string	支架 frame
粘起来 glue	固定到上面 attach to
风筝的控制线 flying line	首次飞行 first flight / maiden flight
放风筝 fly the kite	冲上高空 soar into the sky
(努力) 有回报 pay off (过去时: paid off)	
0 扩展词汇	
圆形 circle	长方形 rectangle
三角形 triangle	椭圆形 oval
螺丝刀 screwdriver	镊子 tweezers 请参考Pat的思路 ,并适当借鉴
钳子 pliers	把弄弯 bend 这个词汇表里的单词,思考
把·····拧起来 twist	折纸 paper folding 如果是您将会 怎么说

Keep it natural.

剪纸 paper cutting

knitting (其实有不少英美老奶奶也喜欢"打毛衣") 缝制

陶艺 pottery

这个网站提供了很多手工制作的详细过程,时间充分的同学不妨看一看:www. kidspot. com. au/things-to-do/collection/craft-activities? sort = title

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

自己动手制作物品可以提高人们,特别是儿童,解决实际问题的能力。在地道 英文里怎样表达"解决实际问题的能力"呢? native speakers 就是用简单、自然的 短语 problem solving skills。

[剑桥例句] Educational toys can improve children's problem-solving skills.

Time to Branch Out.

推而广之

Describe a toy.

WIE STAR : #STELTS 什么是 toys? Longman 和 Oxford 的定义是 objects for children to play with, 所以 kite 本身也是 toy。您不妨再看看。www. toysrus. com, 在这里你将看到的 玩具绝对比你这辈子见过的玩具都多,在页面左上角你既可以选择 Boys' Toys 或 者 Girls' Toys,也可以根据不同的年龄(Age)来选择,更棒的是每个玩具的 Overview 下面还有 More details. 可以让你充分享受一次"返老还童"的感觉 (...)

补充弹药

Rubik's Cube 魔方 (英语里"拼魔方"叫作 solve a Rubik's Cube) Extra Ammo Lego blocks 乐高积木 puzzle 拼图游戏 educational toys 益智玩具

1

what it looks like when you wear it

and explain why you like it.

Pat指南

Part 2 里还有一个题目是 Describe your favourite traditional clothing。所以如果准备 旗袍(chi-pao)或者唐装,就把两个难题一起解决了。

Pat 在中国时看到唐装有很多翻译方法,但是多数的英文听起来都很别扭(They sound awkward.)。我会叫它 Tang suit,至少听起来还是自然地道的英文。

说唐装和旗袍会有一些相似的内容,但 Pat 个人感觉唐装比较宽松 (loose-fitting), 而且它的效果主要是让男士看起来更富贵 (look wealthy and important),而旗袍是紧身 的 (close-fitting),而且效果主要是让女士看起来更优雅 (elegant)。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about my chi-pao. It was a birthday gift from my parents.

It's basically a one-piece, close-fitting dress. But it looks special because it's made from silk which is smooth and shiny. The bell-like sleeves, the colourful pattern and the slits on the sides also make it very different from other dresses.



I only wear my chi-pao on special occasions. For example, I wear it during Spring Festival family celebrations and at formal parties, such as business parties. I also were it at my best friend's wedding last year.

I like it because it's beautiful and elegant, and makes me feel special and confident.

	F.	
轮到你了	It's	s Your Turn.
► Word Bank	TFIELT	1.5.4 AV 18
连衣裙 dress	宽松的 loose-fitting	
丝绸 silk	光亮的 smooth and shiny	a second
像铃铛那样的袖子 bell-like sleeves	花纹 pattern	
服装侧面的窄缝,"开气儿" slit	特殊的场合 special occasion	
家庭的庆祝活动 family celebration	穿上 slip on / put on	
优雅的 elegant		
0 扩展词汇		请参考Pat的思路
独特的 unique	代表 represent	,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
"国宝",一个国家特有的事物 nationa	al treasure	的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

o Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

清朝 the Qing dynasty	满族女性 Manchurian women
身份和地位的象征 status symbol	面料 fabric
缎子 brocade	棉 cotton
长袖子 long sleeves	短袖子 short sleeves
姿态优美的 graceful	家庭团聚 family reunion
制服 uniform	餐馆的男服务生 waiter
餐馆的女服务生waitress	复杂的花纹 complicated pattern
鲜花图案 floral patter	服装上的条纹装饰 stripes
服装上的圆点装饰 polka dots	衬衣 (男式) shirt
衬衣 (女式) blouse	牛仔裤 jeans
牛仔上衣 denim jacket	毛衣(正面不带扣子的毛衣) sweater
毛衣(正面有一排扣子的毛衣) cardigar	适合春秋穿的长袖运动衫 sweatshirt
"帽衫儿" hoodie	休闲的 casual FIE

Part 2 里还有这样一张卡片: Describe a piece of jewellery (首饰) 如 like. 它的 出现频率很低,如果看到这个卡片,真要好好反思一下考前自己是否虐待进办动物或 者坐公车时没给老年人让座了。但只要讲讲是谁送你的,为什么要送给你,你收到时 的心情和你为什么喜欢它,也已经能说出不少扣题的内容。首饰的具体描述有时间的 话可以看看伦敦著名的 Harrods 官网: www.harrods.com,在搜索栏输入 jewellery, 您就可以在每个商品的页面上看到 Overview 和 Details 了。咱们不必考虑价格,因为 "只看一看也是享受" (This website is a feast for the eyes. ③)

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

"传统服装"除了可以叫 traditional clothing,地道英文里还有一个短语 traditional costume,也是指有特色的传统服装。

[剑桥例句] The child was dressed in a traditional costume.

下面是最有名的一些时尚名牌,很多还没有标准的中文翻译,请仔细听音频中的 发音 (它们当中大多数都不是英语,所以发音对中国同学们来说还是比较 tricky ⁽²⁾)

BURBERRY	FENDI	CHANEL
GUCCI	CHOLE	HERMES
BVLGARI	DOLCE&GABBANA	LOUIS VUITTON
VERSACE	SALVATORE FERRAGAMO	MARC JACOBS
ANNA SUI	SWAROVSKI	GIVENCHY

(双语感悟) Bilingual Reflections

Describe an important invention (before the age of computers).

计算机之前的发明, bicycle 也许是最值得我们继续使用而且也最环保 (eco-friendly)的一种了。

首先, It was invented in the late 19th century by some Frenchmen. 然后, It became popular soon after it was invented, because it didn't cest much and it was easy to ride. 立刻流行起来了。Cycling was also faster and more efficient than walking. 原因 就是:既不贵又好骑,而且比走路效率高。

Millions of people ride their bikes every day. Some people cycle to work or school. (骑自行车上班或者上学) Others ride their bikes just for fun. (另一些人就是为了骑车的 乐趣) Cycling is also a good form of exercise. (骑车当然也是很好的锻炼方式)

不妨再了解一下 bicycle 的各个部分 (parts):

铃铛是 bell,不过好像我在北京骑过的几辆车铃铛都不响(The bell didn't work.)。 车把叫作 handlebars,车闸叫 brakes,横梁是 crossbar,车座叫 saddle,脚踏板是 pedals, 链条叫 chain,轮子当然就是 tyres(BrE) / tires(AmE)了。

有些比较贵的自行车还有"变速器", native speakers 把这个东东叫作 shifter。

💶 Day 8.

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

如果自行车很新就说 It's brand-new. 已经比较旧了可以说 It's a bit worn-out.,如果已经很久没骑过了,就说 It's gathering dust now (在"积累灰尘").

国内同学们爱用的 biking 在英美其实也经常可以说成 cycling, 很多英美小朋友在早晨 出门之前还会特意问父母, "Can I cycle to school today?"

在北京如果 cycling 时还戴头盔肯定会被认为是小题大做 (make a fuss about nothing)。但是在英美,骑自行车时戴头盔 (wear a helmet while riding a bike) 实在太常见了,美国有些州甚至明文规定 18 岁以下的孩子不戴头盔是违法的,连警察叔叔都要管。所以如果坚定地说一句 I always wear a helmet while riding my bike.,会让 native speaker 考官觉得你这人特有责任感 (You're a responsible and reliable person.)。

在 Day 7 里面我们讲过 cycling 的各种好处当然也都可以拿过来说,而且还可以继续 扩展,比如: Bicycles don't need 1001 (不需要燃料), so they can help us save money. 当然还有环保的好处: Cycling is very error sendly because it's zero-emission (零排放). It can help us reduce our carbon footprint. (帮助我们减少"碳足迹") 骑自行车对健康的 好处也不要忘了: Cycling is a good way to keep fit. It also helps to improve balance and coordination (改善平衡和协调能力).

在中国工作的雅思考官们当中环保主义者 (environmentalists) 的比例很高,如果您 从周一到周五每天都骑自行车上下班,或者上学、放学都骑自行车,也别忘了说一句 I cycle to and from work (or school) every weekday. ☺

F 事件和经历

Pat 解题 Pat's Thought

在英文里说到 an event 或者 an experience 的时候经常会用到下面这些短语(不一定 每一个都会用到,但通常会用到其中的几个); At first, ...; But then, ...; So ...; After that, ...; Then...; ...shortly afterwards (很短的时间之后); Finally, ...这些短语可以帮 我们把事件的顺序讲得很清楚。如果是要求你描述过去的 event 或者 experience,也不要 忘了使用动词的过去时。

今天我们还会谈到人生中一个重要的 event — wedding。如果说东西方婚礼的差异, Pat 观察到的是西方的婚礼仪式 (wedding ceremony) 更强调 spirituality (精神意义), 而中国的婚礼仪式则更务实 (practical), 比如"闹洞房" (The couple's friends mess around in their bedroom.)就有很喜庆的效果,好玩儿。

本类话题最有代表性的方向 Typical Topics

- * Describe a sports event.
- * Describe a special meal.
- Describe a happy event.
- Describe a success you achieved.
- 双号·林子FIELTS下载 * Describe an important change in your life.

展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Map

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案。那么下面的 思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



💶 Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

分级演示 Sample Answers

1. 开心的事件之 毕业典礼

Describe a happy event. You should say: what it was where it was held who went to the event and explain why it was a happy event.

Pat 指南 / 亡 🔊

中国同学们熟悉的 happy event 选择很多, 近如生日聚会 (birthday party), 迎接新 年的聚会 (New Year's Eve party),婚礼 (wedding) 等等。只要扣题、清晰、自然的答 案就是好答案。正如考官们自己常说的, "It's not what you say, It's how you say it." ELTST

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about my graduation ceremony. It was held at the main assembly hall of my university.

My classmates and I arrived at the assembly hall very early. We were really happy and excited, and all of us were dressed in caps and gowns.

After all the graduates and guests were seated, the chancellor gave a welcome speech and congratulated us on our success. Then he read out our names, one by one, shook hands with us, and handed us our degree certificates. That was one of the happiest moments of my life.

After the ceremony, my friends and I took lots of pictures together outside the assembly hall.



The graduation ceremony was a really happy event because we'd worked so hard to earn our degrees. The ceremony was a celebration of our academic achievements. We were happy and excited also because the ceremony marked the beginning of a new stage in our lives.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.	
► Word Bank		
礼堂 assembly hall (在英美大学里 … Hall)	通常都是用人名来命名教学楼或者礼堂,直接叫	
毕业典礼用的"博士帽"和"袍子" 就座 be seated	cap and gown (这是在英美校园里最常听到的说法,如果想正式一点还可以说 mortarboard and gown,但也有些人就很轻松地说 hat and robe)	
大学的校长 chancellor (英) / pre		
副校长 vice-chancellor (英国的天 其实是副校长 ⁽²⁾)	学校长通常只在仪式上能看到,真正的"实权派"	
做欢迎演讲 give a welcome speech 祝贺 congratulate (动词) / congratulation (名词) 读出 read/ri:d/ out (过去时: read /red/ out)		
读出 read/ri:d/ out (过去时: read /red/ out) 握手 shake hands (过去时: shook hands)		
递给 hand (过去时: handed) 学位证书 degree certificates 人生里最高兴的时刻之一 one of the happiest moments of my life		
通过努力获得学位 earn our degrees 庆祝 celebration(名词)/ celebrate(动词)		
学业成就 academic achievements标志着 mark我们人生里的一个新阶段 a new stage in our lives		
	principal (美式)	

💶 Day 8

- IELTS SPEAKING TEST

毕业证书 diploma 登台 walk onto the stage 从台上一边走到另一边 walk across the stage 特邀演讲者 guest speaker 感人的演讲 a moving speech 励志的演讲 an inspiring speech 流下喜悦激动的泪水 cried tears of joy and excitement 请参考Pat的思路 相互拥抱 hug each other 分享喜悦 share the happiness ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 这个网址堪称伦敦的 events 大全, 而且其中有不少是 happy events: 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 www.timeout.com/dondon/things-to-do/events-festivals 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

毕业典礼之所以让人快乐,是因为它让我们感到"自己所有的辛勤努力都有了 回报", native speakers 会说 All of our hard work paid off. #SISTEL TS T

2. 不愉快的购物经历

Describe an unhappy shopping experience.

You should say:

when you had the experience

where you had the experience

what you bought

and explain how you felt after that experience.

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about one of my recent shopping experiences, a very unpleasant

one.

A couple of days ago, I went to a supermarket to buy some fruit. I saw some apples that looked great. I paid for them right away and went back home. But then I was so surprised to find out that the apples tasted bad. Some of them were even rotten inside. So I returned to the



supermarket and wanted my money back. But their customer service staff just said something like, "You should have tasted them before you paid." I got angry and argued with them. I also complained to the customers around me. But their customer service employees still refused to give me a refund.

I was left with no choice, so I called the Consumers' Association and complained to them about my experience. They promised to look into the matter. Yesterday I got a phone call from the supermarket and they told me they would give me a full refund.

I have to say it was a very unhappy and disappointing experience. But I also learned a lesson from it — compare stuff before buying.

	FIFIE
轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
令人很不愉快的 unpleasant	腐烂的 rotten
要回我的钱 wanted my money back	
客服部的员工 customer service staff / cus (注意:集合名词 staff 是对员 可以加 s)	stomer service employees 员工的统称,不能加 s,但是 employee 则
与争论 argue with…	抱怨,投诉 complain
退款 refund	全额退款 a full refund
消费者协会 the Consumers' Association	令人失望的 disappointing

💶 Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



and explain how you felt about the noise.

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about an experience I had at a hotel last summer. The hotel was close to the airport. I stayed there in order to catch an early flight the next morning.

I arrived at the hotel at around 8:30 pm. At first I was pretty happy. The employees were friendly and my room was nice and clean.



But then I realised I had a noisy neighbour next door. He talked very loudly on his phone for more than an hour. It sounded like he was arguing with someone on the phone. I also heard him throwing things onto the floor. After he got off the phone, he started playing loud music, probably on his laptop.

I tried to ignore the noise, but I couldn't. It made me feel annoyed and upset. So I called the front desk and complained about the noise. The front desk staff apologised and said they would ask my neighbour to stop the noise. The noise stopped about five minutes later.

I got a good night's sleep that night because the bed was very comfortable. But I think my stay at the hotel could have been more enjoyable without the noise from my neighbour.

~ 当由 、	
轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
早班的航班 an early flight	意识到 realise
争论 argue	打完电话, get off the phone
笔记本电脑 laptop	努力忽视噪音, to ignore the noise
感觉很烦而且很郁闷 feel annoyed and upset	
前台 the front desk	抱怨,投诉 complain
道歉 apologise	好好睡一晚 get a good night's sleep
令人愉快的 enjoyable	
2 扩展词汇	
聚会,派对 party	大音量地播放音乐 play loud music
飞机起飞和降落的噪音 the noise of planes taking off and landing 请参考Pat的思路	
很干扰注意力的 very distracting	,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
让人很烦的 very annoying	的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

< 🖓 Day 8 —

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

4. 体育事件

Describe a sports event. You should say: what it was where it was held who went to the event and explain why it was special.



Pat 指南 / 工 的

最容易准备、不需要特别的专业知识的,肯定是 the Olympic Games。权威的朗文词 典对 the Olympic Games 的英文定义就是: an intervisional sports event held every four years。奥运会完全符合题目的各项要求,但关键是怎样用简单的英文把它描述清楚。

在历届奥运会里,给 Pat 印象最深的是伦敦奥运会(London Olympic Games),因 为它比里约奥运会(Rio Olympic games)更公正,而且英国文化也与考官们有着密切的 关系,但描述它其实并不需要高深的词汇。无论您是想描述北京奥运还是里约奥运,道理 是一样的——清晰、扣题、自然的答案才是你的考官期待的。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'd like to talk about the London Olympic Games.

The opening ceremony showed us the amazing contributions Britain had made to the world. I particularly like Mr. Bean's hilarious performance and Paul McCartney's performance of *Hey Jude*.



During the London Olympics, more than 10,000 world-class athletes competed for their nations. Swimming was my favourite sport to watch at the Olympics. I was so excited when Sun Yang got the gold medal in the men's 400-meter freestyle race. He really reminded me of the Olympic motto — "Faster, Higher, Stronger".

The event was very special because only the best athletes in the world went there. Most of them competed fairly and honestly. It was a very inspiring event, and it really helped to promote peace and understanding among nations.



经历

_____ Day 8 -

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

柔韧性 flexibility	团队精神 team spirit
奥林匹克公园 Olympic Park	奥运村 Olympic Village
奥运场馆 Olympic venues	特别精彩的部分,"亮点" highlight
主办城市 the host city	
国际奥委会 The International Olym	pic Committee (IOC)
吉祥物 mascot	奥运会的五环图案 the Olympic rings
距离开幕式 100 天的倒计时 100-da	ay countdown
闭幕式 closing remony	火炬传递 torch relay
点燃奥运圣火 light the compic Fla	ame
开幕式的各国运动员走队 the	te of Nations
竞争激烈的比赛 a fierce competition	on Harsht competition
势均力敌的比赛 an evenly matched	d competition
100 米短跑 100-meter sprint	a competition 摔跤 wrestling 排球 volleyball
柔道 judo	排球 volleyball
艺术体操 artistic gymnastics	花样游泳 synchronised swimming
跳水 diving	水球 water polo
射箭 archery	射击 shooting
击剑 fencing	田径项目 track and field events
跨栏比赛 hurdle race	残奥会 Paralympics / The Paralympic Games
看体育比赛的现场观众 spectators	志愿者 volunteers
代表他们 / 她们的国家 represent their countries	
感受比赛的气氛 enjoy the atmosphere of the game 请参考Pat的思路	
见证 witness	体育迷 sports buff ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
(某个地方)挤满了人的 was packe	ed 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

要跟踪最新的体育赛事,就应该经常登录 BBC 体育栏目,在页面上方还可以挑选你自己最关注的运动项目查看比赛动向:www.bbc.com/sport/37440379

如果您更关注篮球、棒球等运动的赛事,这个网站的报导则更加及时的: espn. go. com

"激烈的竞赛",很多同学都知道 fierce competition 这个短语。另外在英文口语 里还有个说法: a cliffhanger。想象一下被悬在悬崖上的感觉多么让人紧张,就知道 这样的比赛会是多么"扣人心弦"。

[剑桥例句] The match was a cliffhanger until the final seconds.



Pat 指南 (工)

生活里的 success 有很多种。大的 success 比如找到了一份自己很喜欢的工作,或者 成功地申请了自己理想的大学。小的 success 比如为好朋友举办了一个成功的生日聚会, 考试得到了一个好成绩,或者人生里第一次为父母做出了好吃的饭菜等等。

这里 Pat 以一个成功的课堂演示为例,因为同时还可以准备好 Describe a speech. 这个比较难的题。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

o Day 8

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a successful presentation I gave last week.

Two weeks ago, our English teacher asked us to prepare a group presentation on some famous British writers and their works. He also divided us into teams of two or three for the presentation.



My teammate and I discussed the topic and made a list of the main points we wanted to make. After class, we went to the library and found some books on those writers and their works.

We went through the materials and selected the information we wanted to include. Then we made some PowerPoint sides and note cards to help us organise and remember the information. We also practised presenting in front of some friends.

We gave the presentation in class last Wednesday. My teammate gave the introduction and I presented the main part. At first, I was a bit nervous, I was just reading from the note cards. But as I went on, I felt more comfortable and confident. I spoke loudly and clearly. I also smiled and made eye contact with my audience. And I just glanced at the note cards from time to time rather than reading from them.

My teacher and my classmates were very impressed with our presentation. When we finished, our teacher said, "Good job!" And our classmates clapped. We felt really happy and excited, and very proud of ourselves for the success.



队友 teammate	挑选 select
"PPT" 幻灯片 PowerPoint slides	提示卡 note cards
组织 organise	开场白,引言 introduction
有信心的 confident	进行目光交流 make eye contact
听众 audience	很快地看一眼 glance at
鼓掌 clap 感到自豪 feel (过去时; felt) prou	id of ourselves 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 怎么说
很强的成就感 strong sense of ac 获得成功 achieve specess 高效率的 efficient	chievement 令人难忘的经历 a memorable experience 很有效的 effective
我的辛勤努力有了回报 My hard We 课堂演示是英美年轻人经常要任	
interesting talk or a speech. 这个话员	题的时候,您也可以考虑描述一个 TED talk。这个 迎的一些演讲视频,话题都很有趣:www.ted.

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

地道英文里评价一个好的 speech 有很多标准,比如 moving (感人的), inspiring (励志的),witty (机敏的),insightful (有洞察力的,有"真知灼见" 的),well-rehearsed (预先"演练"得很充分的),well-structured (结构很合理 的),informative (信息量大的)等等。但是说到底,a good speech 的共同点就是 well-received (很受听众欢迎的)。

[剑桥例句] His speech was well-received — the audience response was very positive.
<i>´</i>		IELTS SPEAKING TES
ime to B 師广之	ranch Out.	
Describ	e a skill.	
充弹药		*
rewardir	g 很有回报的	
motivate	d 很有动力的	/
build se	lf-condence 树立自信	
practise	this skill as of as I can 尽可能地多练习这种技	能 能
6. 1	有趣的科学课	
	Describe an interesting lesson you attended.	
		E.
	You should say	SLTC.
	You should say when you attended this lesson	ELTST
	You should say when you attended this lesson where you attended it	TSKA

Pat指南 🚺

Pat 发现国内的朋友们普遍觉得这道题很"悲催",跟学生们深入交流之后发现:其 实"悲催"的主要原因是国内的科学课教学往往过于理论化 (focus too much on theory),比较单调,甚至在有些同学的记忆里根本就没有过 an interesting science lesson。

如果您在国外上过中学的 science class,就会深感这边的科学课确实可以用 interesting 来形容。因为国外中学的科学课强调 hands-on science (实际动手的科学),

Keep it natural.

重视实验和展示 (experiments and demonstrations),而且上课时常会播放科学短片 (show students science videos)。为了吸引学生的兴趣,science teachers 还经常拿可乐 (coke),柠檬水 (lemonade)、葡萄干 (raisin)或者爆米花 (popcorn)这类东西到教 室做实验,甚至有时连微波炉 (microwave)、烤箱 (oven)这类厨具也会登场。最近在 英美中学的科学课里还时髦用一些不可逆的化学反应 (irreversible chemical reactions) 来展示 Harry Potter 的魔法到底是怎么变出来的,完全是真实的 Harry Potter 3D 版。所以 Pat 非常建议大家把 an interesting science lesson 这道题说得轻松一点,如果说得过于理 论化、抽象化,不仅有被判跑题 (off-topic) 的可能,也会让考官感到文化休克 (culture shock)。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to tak about a science lesson I attended at secondary school when I was about 16 years old.

My science teacher was a middle aged man who was nice and patient. Just like many scientists, he wore thick glasses and spoke slowly. But he had a good sense of humour and his lessons were always fun.



One of the most interesting science lessons he taught us was about density. He came into the classroom with a large beaker, a bag of raisins and a bottle of Pepsi, which really attracted our attention. He said he was going to share with us the "top secrets" of density.

He poured some Pepsi into the beaker, and then put a couple of raisins in it. Of course, the raisins sank to the bottom of the beaker. But then, to our surprise, after they hit the bottom of the beaker, they went back up and they just kept going up and down in the Pepsi, which was really interesting.

Our teacher then explained to us the reason for this. At first, the raisins were heavier than the Pepsi. But after some gas in the Pepsi went into the raisins, their

经历

o Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

density became lower than that of Pepsi, so they went up. Once the raisins reached the surface of the Pepsi, the gas in them was pushed out and their density became high again, so they started to sink again.

I found this lesson interesting because our teacher really made the concept of density come alive. The experiment was simple but really fun, and it made the concept of density very easy to understand.



勺子 spoon 镊子 tweezers 显微镜 microscope 秤 scale 请参考Pat的思路 滴管 dropper 试管 test tube ,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里 温度计 thermometer 漏斗 funnel 的单词,思考 如果是您将会 混合 mix 搅拌 stir 怎么说

您有空时应该看看每年有超过 300 万人参观的伦敦科学博物馆 (the Science Museum of London) 的官网: www. sciencemuseum. org. uk/educators/classroomresources。选择你想要了解的学生年龄段,再选择 subject,您就可以看到考官们真正 熟悉的 science lesson 到底是怎样教的了。

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Keep it natural.

在地道英文里如果要说一节课一引人入胜的",最准确的表达是 engaging 这个形 容词,而且它也可以用来描述 a speech a TV show, a book 甚至 a childhood story。 Although I was tired, I tound
 want to stay up and keep reading it is to stay up an 【英美实例】Although I was tired, I found the book very engaging, making me

7. 一场表演

☆ 一场表演之 音乐会

Describe a performance, such as a dancing or singing performance.

You should say:

what kind of performance it was

when and where you watched it

what it was like

and explain how you felt about it.



Day 8

Pat 指南 C D

Pat 自己是个乐迷 (I'm a music buff),对古典音乐和流行音乐都很喜欢。这里给您 讲讲去看一个 rock concert 的经历吧,比古典音乐会 (classical concert) 更接近多数 "烤鸭" 朋友们的真实生活。您可以体会一下怎么用英文描述那种热烈的气氛 (exciting atmosphere)。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I went to ... (the band's name) 's concert last Friday night. It was held at the largest stadium in my city. I'd been a big fan of the band. I'd even made a poster to hold up during the concert



Last Friday night, I arrived at the stadium early. But it took me about 40 minutes to get to my seat. The concert attracted people of all ages, and the stadium was packed!

When the band took the stage, everyone stood up, clapped and cheered. Many people screamed the band members' names at the top of their lungs. Some people were so excited they even cried.

The band played songs from many of their albums and even played some acoustic songs. Then they performed their latest single. We waved our arms and sang along. I think for many people, that was the most memorable moment of the concert.

It was really exciting and inspiring to be so close to the band. And the live music was amazing. The band members did notice my poster. They even waved to me from the stage, which made me feel like I was on top of the world.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
▶ Word Bank	
体育场 stadium	海报 poster
吸引各个年龄段的人们 attract p	people of all ages
挤满了人的 packed	登台 take (过去时: took) the stage
鼓掌欢呼 clap and cheer	乐队成员 band members
高声呼喊 scream at the top of	of their lungs
专辑 album	单曲 single
不用电子合成的歌曲,"不插电"	歌曲 acoustic songs
挥舞胳膊 wave our ages	一起跟着唱 sing along
最值得回忆的时刻 the move	morable moment
激励人的 inspiring	No.
现场表演的音乐 live music (注	意:在这个短语里 live 的正确发音是 / laiv /)
向······挥手 wave to	IFIFIEI -
极度喜悦的(短语) on top of	:意:在这个短语里 live 的正确发音是/laiv/) the world
0 扩展词汇	And the second
现场音乐会 live concert	表演者 performer
(粉丝) 变得狂热了 go wild (j	过去时:went wild)
偶像 idol	气氛 atmosphere
充满活力的 full of energy	极度兴奋的 thrilled
昏过去了 pass out	最精彩的部分,"亮点" highlight
乐队和观众之间的互动 interact	ion between the band and the audience
弯腰去和粉丝握手 bend down	to shake hands with their fans

Day 8-

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



8. 帮别人准备的一个聚会



VIE.

对于多数"烤鸭"来说,生日聚会是最有话可说的 party,只用"小词"就可以说得 扣题、清晰、自然。

难度指数:★★☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a party I organised for a good friend of mine named Mia. Last month, I noticed her birthday was coming up. I wanted her to have a really special birthday, so I decided to organise a surprise birthday party for her.

I called my friends Jillian, Chris, Evan and Matt who were also Mia's friends, and asked them if they'd like to join me in throwing a surprise birthday party for Mia. They were very excited to hear my ideas and promised they wouldn't tell anyone about my plan. I also called Mia's parents in advance to make sure they would be okay with my plan.



On Mia's birthday, we went to her home with a big birthday cake, colourful balloons and our presents for her. We also helped her parents decorate the living room. Then we hid behind doors or curtains.

About ten minutes later, we heard footsteps and Mia came in. We jumped out and shouted, "Surprise!" Mia was so surprised she was like, "My goodness! What's going on here?" Everyone said "Happy Birthday" to her. Then we brought out the cake, lit the candles, and started singing the birthday song to her.

Mia was so excited she was moved to teas. She thanked everyone for the party, and she said it was the most special birthday she ever had.

I was very glad Mia liked the party I organised for her. If all my planning really paid off.

轮到你了	It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank	
本文里所用的人名都是目前国外年轻人	的常见名字
作为惊喜的生日聚会 a surprise birthday party(表达这个意思时, native speakers 不说 a surprising birthday party X)	
为某人开派对 throw a party for	提前给打电话 call in advance
气球 balloons	生日礼物 birthday present

Oay 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

装饰 decorate	藏起来 hide (过去时; hide)
窗帘 curtains	脚步 footsteps
点蜡烛 light (过去时: lit) the candle	es all met an
]学们都知道 Oh my God!,但是在真实的英美 odness!更常听到,只有感到"非常震惊"的 Oh my God!)
感动地流泪 was moved to tears	有回报 pay off (过去时: paid off)
● 扩展词汇	
过生日的男孩 /女孩 wirthday boy	/ the birthday girl
密友 close friends	生日贺卡 birthday card
异口同声地说"生日快乐" say	Birthday" in unison
唱"祝你生日快乐" sing(过去时:	sang) "Henpy Birthday"
许愿 make (过去时: made) a wish	S. Her
吹蜡烛 blow out (过去时: blew out)	the candles
彼此拥抱 hug each other	the candles 切蛋糕 cut the cake
开礼物 open the presents	No. o
唱卡拉 OK sing karaoke (过去时: s karaoke 的正确发音, 很多	, 丌也三個金
非常值得回忆的经历 a memorable ex	的单词,思考

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

准备 IELTS 口语最好的心态就是把它看成学习地道英文和了解英语文化的起点。 您进入任何一所英联邦大学之后都会立刻明白 party 在当地的校园文化里扮演着何等 重要的角色。这个网站也能为你提供很多 party ideas: www.partycity.com/ category/party + ideas.do 如果要说一个聚会是"精心策划"的,除了 It was carefully planned / carefully organised / carefully arranged. 这三个地道短语之外,还有一个国内孩子很少用但 在国外却挺常用的表达: This was a well-thought-out party.

[剑桥例句] Nothing can be more fun than going to a well-thought-out birthday party.

9. 婚礼



William 与 Kate (在英美生活里一般是简称他们为 Will and Kate) 当年的 royal wedding 在全世界获得了 20 亿观众的收视率,现在都已经生"二胎"了,可见 wedding 永远是一个令人向往的主题。

中国同学们回答这道题的常见误区是把婚礼的每一步都很机械、呆板地罗列出来, 导致听起来更像是专业婚礼司仪(地道英文里叫作 wedding MC)在讲解自己的服务项目。 其实考官真正想听你说的是一个扣题、自然、有整体感的描述(description)。

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a good friend's wedding I attended last month.

The wedding ceremony was held in a church. It began at 9 in the morning.

_oDay 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

There were around 150 people at the ceremony, including the bride and groom's family, friends and colleagues. We all dressed up for the occasion.

After the guests were seated, the Wedding March started and the bridesmaids entered. My friend, you know, the bride, entered last, in a white wedding dress. Many guests were moved



to tears as the bride and groom met at the front of the room, exchanged wedding vows and kissed each other.

There were even more people at the wedding reception, which was held in a hotel. The room was well decorate with lots of flowers and a huge wedding cake. My friend and her husband walked around and greeted their guests. Everyone had a A A B . MEISIEL great time at the party.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Word Bank	STA
结婚仪式 wedding ceremony / marriage 仪式和婚宴两个部分)	e ceremony (英美的婚礼一般都是包括结婚
婚宴 wedding reception	
新郎新娘 the bride and groom (地道英	文里的习惯顺序是"新娘新郎")
同事 colleagues / co-workers	穿着比较正式的服装 dress up
就座 were seated	婚礼进行曲 the Wedding March
伴娘 bridesmaids	婚纱 wedding dress / wedding gown
热泪盈眶 were moved to tears	交换结婚誓言 exchange wedding vows
装饰得很好的 well-decorated	婚礼蛋糕 wedding cake
问候客人们 greeted their guests	and the second

Keep it natural.



Describe an occasion when you had a special cake.

在英美,人们不仅在生日派对(birthday party)和婚宴(wedding reception)上吃 "大蛋糕",有时也会把小蛋糕当成饭后的甜点(dessert),Pat还有一些英国朋友很喜欢 在喝茶的时候配上小蛋糕。当然,除了介绍场合,为了确保扣题还应该重点谈谈蛋糕为什 么特殊:也许是定制的蛋糕(英文叫作 a customised cake / a custom-made cake),看 起来很特殊 It looked very special.(例如椭圆形的蛋糕 oval cake 或者像婚礼蛋糕那样很 多个叠起来的蛋糕 tiered/ tiəd/ cake),或者 It tasted very special.(例如 cake with a crunchy nut topping 蛋糕表面铺着一层 almond 杏仁,pecan 山核桃等口感很脆的坚果,

经历

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

或者吃起来感觉就像含有水分一样 It tasted very moist,放到嘴里就化了 melted in my mouth. Pat 还吃过一种比较特殊的含有姜粉 ginger powder 的蛋糕,味道有点辣 a bit spicy),还有可能是因为蛋糕上面的装饰很特殊(The decorations on the cake were very special. 例如有可以吃的彩带 edible ribbons that looked great and tasted awesome, 或 者蛋糕上面写的话很特殊 There were words on the cake, saying ... 让你觉得很感动 I felt really moved by the words. 或者很受激励 I felt really inspired by the words.), 甚至有可 能是因为这个蛋糕就是你的某一位亲人或朋友亲手烤的 (The cake was baked by my ...)。不论特殊的原因是什么, www. allrecipes. com/recipes/276/desserts/cakes/这个 网站都足以满足您对于蛋糕的一切幻想,图片都很诱人,介绍也很详细(注意:看看关键 词即可,但不要全文 copy,你自己花时间组织的内容哪怕是简单一点也要比全文机械背 诵的答案听起来更自然)。Enjoy the cake!

Pat 最近在一本介绍中国文化的书里看到一段英文,谈到了中国文化里面人生的四大 喜事,您可以看看是不是能猜出来它们分别是什么:

Marriage is known as one of the touchappiest things in one's life. The other three are achievement in examinations, meeting old friends away from home and rainfall after en. MEIFIEL TS a drought. 🙂

10. 节日

🔄 Day 8

Describe a festival that is popular in your country.

You should say:

what the festival is

when it is celebrated

what people do during this festival

and explain whether you like this festival or not.

Pat指南 🖌 🖬 🖻

国内同学们描述 festival 的常见问题同样是机械地罗列节日的起源和相关活动,一听 就是在背诵 (像这样简单粗暴的答题方式,甚至即使不是在背都会让考官误以为你在背)。

只要扣题,无论说哪个节日都是可以的,但必须始终牢记:虽然 Part 2 是"独白", examiner 也希望听到你自然、真实地说话。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about the Duan Wu Festival. It falls on the fifth day of the fifth month of the lunar calendar. It has become even more popular since it became a public holiday in China.



The festival is celebrated in honour of a

famous poet in Chinese history, named Qu Yuan. His country was defeated in a war and even lost its capital. The poet was so sad he drowned himself. These days, during the festival people eat rice dumplings (or in Chinese, *zong zi*), to pay tribute to him. We all respect people who love their country, right?

Another popular way to celebrate the festival is dragon boat racing. It's like a number of teams rowing and competing against one another. The boats are decorated to look like dragons, so they're called dragon boats. To be honest, I've only watched dragon boat races on TV. From what I've seen on TV, they are very fun and exciting events.

I like the Duan Wu Festival because it celebrates loyalty and the circle of life. And *zong zi*, the main food we eat during the festival, tastes really good...

轮到你了		It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
起源 origin	很爱国的 patriotic	
糯米 sticky rice / glutinous rice		
(粽子、元宵或饺子里的)"馅儿"	stuffing / filling	
豆沙 bean paste		

Day 8

IELTS SPEAKING TEST



Pat 自己长期生活在国外,每年都可以最真实地感受到春节对英语国家文化的影响力确实越来越大。您不妨看看伦敦在 2017 年是怎样庆祝中国新年的,而且还可以学习怎样用英文来介绍中国的 12 生肖 (the Chinese zodiac animals): www.telegraph.co. uk/news/0/chinese-new-year-2017-year-rooster-celebrate-whats-your-zodiac-animal/

IELTS 口试有时还会考 Describe a historical event. (一个历史事件)这个话题。 如果您想介绍中国历史, history. cultural-china. com/34two. html 这个网站覆盖了绝大 多数重要的中国历史事件,页面右上角从 A 一直到 Z 极为全面,页面左侧的 History in Photos 还有点儿"看图说话"的感觉。而 www.tostepharmd.net/hissoc/top100events.html则提供了Life杂志对于最近一千年里人类的100个重要历史事件的深入描述。Pat 要提醒您注意的是:尽管每个历史学家都希望自己不带有偏见(unbiased),但事实是历史学家们即使在看待同一个事件时也往往会意见不一致。这个网站上的有些观点同样存在着偏见,请您充分发挥自己的辩证思维能力(critical thinking skills),不必盲从(Don't accept their views blindly.)。

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

每个传统节日的背后都有着丰富的故事(There're many interesting tales behind every traditional festival.)。那么怎样用地道英文表示一个节日是我们的"文化遗产"的重要部分呢? native speakers 会说 It's an important part of our cultural heritage.

[剑桥例句] Folk music is an important part of our cultural heritage.

11. 第一次品尝某种食品的经历

Describe an occasion when you tried a kind of food for the first time.

the.

You should say:

when that was

where that was

what you tried

and explain how you felt about the experience.



经历

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

Last Saturday was one of my best friends' birthday, so we went to a buffet

💶 🛛 Day 8 _

restaurant to celebrate.

There was a large sushi area in the restaurant. I'd never had sushi before, so my friend encouraged me to try it. That made me feel nervous because I'd heard sushi had raw fish in it but I didn't like food that's not cooked. I told my friend about my concern and she recommended " California rolls". She said California rolls didn't have any raw fish in them — just cucumber, crab sticks, avocado and rice.



I picked up a California roll and put it on my plate, still feeling a bit nervous. But it was my friend's birthday and I wanted to make her happy. So I took a deep breath and took a small bite of the sushi. It tasted very bland. I had to dip the sushi in soy sauce to add some flavour to it.

My friend asked me if I liked it. I didn't want to disappoint her so I told her it was "really good".

Honestly, I didn't really like the sushi. But it was still a fun and exciting experience for me because I tried something I had never eater before — almost like an adventure.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Word Bank	
自助餐馆 buffet restaurant	寿司 sushi
鼓励 encourage	紧张的 nervous
生鱼 raw fish (生鱼片叫 sashimi)	熟的 cooked
担忧,顾虑 concern	推荐 recommend
黄瓜 cucumber	蟹肉条 crab stick
牛油果 avocado	米 rice
盘子 plate	深呼吸 take a deep breath

Keep it natural.

		the same size of the same of the same size of the same si
咬了一小口 take a small bite of	味道很淡的 bland	1.0
蔬 dip		Sec.
酱油 soy sauce (sauce 是指调味酱, 料本身的味道反而不是"辣么"		成饭",对原
滋味 flavor		
② 扩展词汇		
做菜的原料 ingredients	意大利面条 spaghetti	
比萨饼 pizza	英国的炸鱼薯条 fish and chips	
海鲜饭。paella	南瓜派 pumpkin pie	-
法式长面包,法棒 baguette	奶酪汉堡 cheeseburger	青参考Pat的思路
韩国泡菜 kimchi	墨西哥卷饼 taco	,并适当借鉴 这个词汇表里
泰式炒河粉 Pad Thai	主菜 main dish	的单词,思考 如果是您将会
主菜之前的开胃小吃 appetiser	饭后甜点 dissert	怎么说
作为一个资深"吃货" (foodie), com,只要从开胃菜、主菜和饭后甜点	1.5.	-
Com, 只要从丌自来、主来和吸后的点 全, 不仅英文简单易懂, 而且做菜的步		
再也不必担心因为实现留学的梦想而让	A St.	

12. 迟到的经历



🔩 Day 8 🗕

难度指数:★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'd like to tell you about a job interview I was late for.

Last Tuesday, I got an email from a company, inviting me for a job interview. I



applied for a job at that company last month and really hoped I could get it. At first, I felt very excited But then I got nervous. I slept little that night. And the next morning I woke up laterat around 8:30.

They'd asked me to arrive by 9 am. So I ran out of my apartment, hailed a taxi and told the driver to drive as fast as possible. But there was a serious traffic jam, and we got stuck in traffic. The taxi moved so slowly I got mad. I yelled at the driver to drive faster, but he told me there was really nothing he could do about it.

I had no choice but to call the hiring manager at the company. I told him I would probably be late for the interview and I was really sorry about that. To my surprise, that gentleman remained very nice and calm and told me not to worry about it. They would just wait for me. He even asked me to tell the taxi driver to drive safely.

Finally I got there and had the interview. It went very well. I answered all of their questions about myself and my past experience honestly and clearly. They were impressed with my answers and... I got the job!

I was very excited and felt lucky because I was almost half an hour late for the interview. But looking back, I guess I should have said sorry to the taxi driver. I really shouldn't have yelled at him.



叫出租车,拦出租车 hailed a taxi	被"堵"在路上了 got stuck in traffic
向某人大声叫嚷 yelled at someone	平静的 calm
安全驾驶 drive safely	
2 扩展词汇	
约定的时间 appointment	通常都很守时 usually punctual
完全忘记了约定 totally forgot the app	pointment
匆忙地 in a hurry	雨下得很大 It was raining hard.
路面湿滑 The road was wet and slip	pery.
错过了公车 missed the bus.	请参考Pat的思避
公车晚点半个小时 The bus was half	并适当供当
告诉我放松并且保持镇定 d me to	的单词 思
4	2
Pat 的海外生活英语实录	et S. He of he due to be the set
the second second second second second second	The second s

Pat 的海外生活英语实录

忘记上闹钟或者闹钟没响是很多人约会迟到的原因,"忘记上闹钟"的英文是 | forgot to set the alarm (clock). 而"闹钟由于某种原因没有响"的英文则是 Somehow the alarm (clock) didn't go off.

13. 一部好的法律



Day 8.

IELTS SPEAKING TEST

Pat 指南 (C)

这年头可真不能是法盲,连 IELTS 考试都要求描述法律……

这个卡片话题并不是描述事件,但是因为在介绍"how you first heard about it"的时候需要用到动词的过去时态,所以我们把它放在这里来看一看怎样用清晰、扣题、自然的英文描述一部好的法律。

难度指数:★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about the Traffic Safety Law in China. I first heard about this law from a friend. Then I learned more about it at the driving school I attended.

This law has eight main parts, including rules about driving, parking and road signs. It was passed in 2003 and took effect in 2004.



It's a good law because the rules are very clear and detailed, so they can be easily understood by drivers. For example, the penalty for drive driving is clearly set out in the law. The aim of the penalty is to show drivers that drink-driving is a crime and it won't be tolerated. This definitely helps to reduce drink-driving.

This law is good also because lawmakers have been making changes to it to keep the law up to date. The number of drivers in China has been increasing rapidly. And the number of car accidents has also been rising. We really need an effective and up-to-date traffic law to improve road safety.

This law helps to make our roads safer. I think everyone — drivers, cyclists and pedestrians — who obey this law can benefit from it.

轮到你了		It's Your Turn.
► Word Bank		
规定 rules	停车 parking	

Keep it natural.

道路标识 road signs	正式实施 take effect
详细的 detailed	处罚 penalty
醉驾 drink-driving (英式)	/ drunk-driving (美式)
在法律里得到明文规定 is c	clearly set out in the law
目标 aim	不会被容忍,零容忍 won't be tolerated
保持法律有很好的时效性 kd	eep the law up to date
事故 accident	改善道路安全 improve road safety https://www.alage.com
骑自行车的人 cyclist	行人 pedestrian
遵守法律 obey the law	
し 扩展词 に 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、	
驾驶时使用手机 use a work	le phone while driving
[BBC 例句] Drivers who us	e a mobile phone while driving will face tougher penalties.
劳动法 labour law	公司法 company law / corporate law 请参考Pat的思路
商业法 commercial law	版权法 copyright law 这个词汇表里
婚姻法 marriage law	专利法 patent law 这个词汇表里 的单词,思考如果是您将会 怎么说

☆双语感悟之 人生里一个积极的变化

Describe a positive change in your life. You should say: what this change was when this change happened why it was positive and explain how this change has influenced your life. 想说好 Part 2, 首先必须扣题。

什么样的 change 算是 a positive change?

a positive change 可以是生活小事。比如自己以前不关心家长,甚至经常和家长吵架 (often argued with my parents),有一次父亲或者母亲生病了才明白应该照顾父母,自己 也变得更关心、体贴别人了 (became a more caring and understanding person)。

又比如说自己以前在足球队或者篮球队里不愿意和队友合作(was not a good team player),总想成为注意力的焦点(always wanted to be the center of attention),经常拒绝传球给队友(often refused to pass the ball to my teammates),而且也不关心队友的感受(didn't care about my teammates' feelings)。球队遭到一次惨败之后(after our team suffered a serve defeat),自己才明白团队合作的重要性(the importance of teamwork),学会了尊重自己的队友(learned to respect my teammates),于是向队友们 道歉(apologised to my teammates),并且开始和队友们密切地合作(started to work closely with my teammates)。球队获得了很大进步(Our team improved a lot.),自己与队友们也成了好朋友(l became good friends with my teammates.),直到现在还保持联系(l still keep in touch with most of them.)等等。

a positive change 同样也可以是对你的生活方式有深刻影响的大事。比如自己以前过 度依赖家长 (relied too much on my parents),而且从来都不帮家长做饭或者打扫房间 (never helped my parents with cooking or cleaning),但后来离开家去别的城市上大学, 让你变得更加独立而且更有责任感了 (more independent and responsible)。

再比如你以前的生活方式很不健康(I used to have an unhealthy lifestyle.),例如每 天花很多时间打网络游戏(spent many hours playing online games),爱吃垃圾食品 (ate lots of junk food, ate 是 eat 的过去时),还熬夜看电视(stayed up late watching TV)等等。但一个电视节目、一本书或者一篇报纸上的文章(a newspaper article)帮助 你真正明白了不健康生活方式的危害(helped me better understand the damage caused by an unhealthy lifestyle)。你决定改变自己的不健康生活方式(decided to change my unhealthy lifestyle),例如减少玩网络游戏的时间(reduced the time I spent playing online games),远离垃圾食品(stayed away from junk food),多吃蔬菜水果(ate lots of fruit and vegetables),按时作息(kept a regular sleep schedule),开始经常锻炼身体 (started to exercise regularly)等等。现在自己每天都感觉很有活力(feel energetic every day),而且注意力也更集中了(can concentrate better)......

Day 9



Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

I talk of freedom You talk of the flag I'll look at you, you'll look at me This will be what it's like

* www.ted.com/talks*

考官在 Part 3 里提出的问题一般都比较"宏大",而且要求你说出一些细节(details),而不再只是像 Part 1 那样轻松愉快的闲谈。为了从它态上做好准备,您可以登录这个 TED 网站,它的话题 已经覆盖了 Part 3 的全部常见话题,而且 TED talks 的用词风格本 身就很接近 Part 3 的用词风格,认真听吧

* www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/general/sixminute/ *

BBC 著名的"6 Minute English"也是准备 Part 3 的好工具,而 且全部都是用标准英音说的,尽情地模仿发音你也不必担心"走火 入魔" ②

Nert 3 高分答案的结构

口语 Part 3 是深入讨论 (detailed discussion),考官会提出 6~8 个与你之前拿到的 卡片话题相关的问题。但与 Part 1 的提问不同的是:考官在 Part 3 的提问很少涉及你个人 的"私生活",而是更关注社区、城市、社会、国家甚至国际层面的问题,并且还要 求你能够说出一些细节 (details)。所以,能否回答好 Part 3 往往是区分普通的口试 表现 (6~65 分)和优秀的口试表现 (7 分或以上)的重要分水岭。

好消息是 Part 3 虽然是深入讨论,但它毕竟还是口语考试,而不是书面考试。你 只要能确实针对考官的问题提出自己的看法,并适当支持自己的看法就已经很好了,并不 需要"长篇大论"。而且, British Council 给出的 Part 3 官方高分答案仍然有清晰的逻辑 规律,并非"无厘头"。只要有勇气、有决心, Part 3 完全可以顺利过关。

British Council 对考生 Part 3 答案结构的建议

- **01** 明确回答考官提出的问题 (Answer the question directly.),让考官放心 你不会跑题;
- 02 给出你这样说的理由 (reason);
- 03 支持你给出的理由,有理有据的谈话才能叫作讨论 (discussion)。口语 对话里最常见的支持方式就是举例。但如果实在想不出任何恰当的例子, 或者对某个理由确实"无感",那么也不要紧张,就用简单的方式再解释 或转述一下自己的理由也同样能让你的理由听起来更有说服力;



o Day 9

- 04 如果你发现自己说"high"了,想到的理由居然还不止一个,那么可以再 继续说出其它的理由以及相应的支持。但请注意:这一步不是必须的(It is optional.)。如果并没有想到更多的理由,那么在答案里只说一个理由 并且给出支持就已经很好了。口试里的最大敌人其实是"刻意为之";
- 05 在 Part 3,考官会连续发问,一般会问 6~8个问题。对于其中的 2~3个你特别"有感觉"的问题,还可以选择用"On the other hand,...","But it's also true ...","Without ..., ...would...","If we don't..., ...will..."等方式再简要地谈一谈问题的另一面(You may mention an opposite idea.)。但是请注意:这一步也不是必须的,你可以选择在 2~3个问题的答案里给出,但是不必勉强。

怎样才能说得流畅而不机械?

在 Part 3 答案里的句子之间,可以用 because, For example, such as, like (比如……), so, if, and, also 等 native speakers 在日常对话里真正使用的逻辑关系词 来形成逻辑连接(如果不确定用法那么请复习 Day 4),不要用怪异,不自然的连接词破 坏你的答案的连贯性。

British Council 提供的高分答案实例分析

口语 Part 3 常被中国同学们戏称为"趴睡",除了因为中文的"趴睡"和英文的 Part 3 发音接近之外,还因为很多同学感觉 Part 3 的挑战太大,所以干脆选择了"就地卧 倒"。其实只要真正理解了上一页的高分答案结构,在 Part 3"说长答案" (extend your answer)并不是一件很困难的事情。

我们一起来看 British Council 官方提供的 Part 3 高分答案实例:



◇ 比较两种选择 ◇

Do you think it's better to rent or to buy a place to live in?

I think it's better to buy a place to live in (第1步:明确回答考官提出 的问题,让考官放心) because it gives us more freedom (第2步: 给出 自己这样回答的理由). For example, we can decorate our living room as we wish (第3步:举例子支持自己的理由). And we don't need to pay rent if we own the place (第4步: 给出自己的其它理由). On the other hand, it's true that these days many young people can't afford to buy their own place, so they have to rent (第5步:自然地提及了"另一面").

需要注意的是:以上这个高分实例在 British Council 给出的 Part 3 官方实例里属于比较少有的"五脏俱全"的答案,而另一些高分答案就没有这么完整了(但所有的官方实例都含有一些"细节"details)。

这是 British Council 给出的结构更精炼的一个 Part 3 高分实例:

○ 列举并说明原因 ∽

What qualities make a person admirable? Why?

I think kindness and honesty are important qualities that most people admire (明确回答考官的问题) because sometimes it's hard to put other people first, and it's not always easy to tell the truth (给出自己这样回答的理由). People who are prepared to do these things are very special and others tend to admire them (这名高分考生回答这道问题时明显没有想到可以恰当支持自己理由的实例,所以他 / 她并没有强迫自己"举栗子",而是选择了只简单地解释自己的理由,同样也形成了有效的支持)



这名高分考生也并没有想到"另一面"的内容,就没有强求,答案的效果仍然是连贯的、完整的,反而比想不出"另一面"的时候磕磕巴巴地"顽抗"要好。

下面这个来自 British Council 的 Part 3 高分实例的结构复杂度则介于前面两个实例之间:

◇ 比较男女差距 ∽

Do you think men and women respect different qualities?

Yes, I think men admire competence while women prefer personal qualities (明确回答考官的问题). I suppose it's <u>because</u> they had different traditional roles (给出自己这样认为的理由). In the past, women looked after the children and men worked to earn money, so they tended to respect different qualities (解释、支持自己的理由,虽然不算 很"细",但还是让答案听起来有了一些细节感). But I also think this is changing and men and women are becoming more similar in their attitudes (这名考生确实想到了"另一面",所以就没跟者官客气,但这一步不 是必须有的 It's optional.).

Test Tip

作为一种英语语言能力测试, IELTS 口试最可贵之处就是它的目的是考查真实的交流 技能,而不是考查"背诵技能"。主办方明确指出:Part 3 答案的结构并不是僵化的、一 成不变的(Examiners are only interested in your ability to communicate. That is all they are judging and assessing.)。我们从上面的官方高分实例可以清楚地看出:如果在支持 自己的理由时并没有想到恰当的例子,那么就不必勉强举例。如果确实没想到"另一面" 的内容,那么也不用"硬着头皮"去谈另一面。只要认真地回答考官提出的问题,不跑 题,而且也能够适当地给出理由,确实有"讨论"(discussion)的感觉、而不是"逃论" (escape from the discussion)的感觉,那么就是一个有效的 Part 3 答案 (is a wellstructured Part 3 answer)。



> 熟悉高分答案结构

British Council 官方把 Part 3 的考题类型分成 5 种:

☆ 你的意见是什么 (give opinions)

✤ 列举 (list items)

☆ 分析原因 (give reasons)

✤比较 (compare)

展望未来 (discuss future changes)

每种题型的官方高分答案实例我们都来分析一下:

先请您登录本书的音频下载网站、打开 Day 9 的音频文件。

考题类型:

听到每一个问题后,建议您:(1) 先思考你自己会如何回答这个问题,(2) 然后再 对比官方高分答案实例是如何安排结构的。(提示:British Council 提供的高分实例均为答 案样例 sample answers,但不是唯一的答案 just one example out of many possible approaches)。

Do you agree that travel can contribute to the economy of a country?

考题类型:你的意见

Yes, I agree (明确回答考官的问题) <u>because</u> travellers contribute a lot to the service industry in the country they travel to (给出自己这样回答的理由). For example, travellers spend money on hotels, food and entertainment ("举 栗子"支持自己的理由). Many travellers also <u>buy</u> souvenirs from local shops (想到了更多恰当的"栗子"时也不要犹豫,举例的关键是两个字: 扣题).

Do you think local businesses are important to a community?

Day 9

考题类型:你的意见

Yes, I think they're very important (明确回答考官的问题) <u>because</u> they bring people together and help people build a strong sense of community (给出 自己这样回答的理由). For example, many people like to meet their friends at local cafés or restaurants (举例支持自己的理由).

hat kinds of jobs have the highest salaries in your country? Why? 考题类型:

考题类型:列举并说明原因

The CEOs and managers of large companies get the highest salaries in my country (明确回答考官的问题). They work hard and help their companies achieve success (给出自己这样回答的理由). They are rewarded for their efforts and commitment (举例并不是支持的唯一方法,简要解释自己的理由 也是很好的支持).

Do you agree that schools should teach children how to manage money?

考题类型:你的意见

Yes, I agree <u>because</u> teaching children how to manage money can help them develop their financial skills. For example, they can learn how to make a budget. They will also learn how to make a budget and how to manage living expenses.

Do you think it's impolite to use mobile phones in public places?

考题类型: 你的意见

<u>I think that depends on</u> the place (明确回答考官的问题是指考生必须正面地、有效地回应考官提出的问题,不能逃避问题,但不是说永远只能用 Yes 或者 No 答题, British Council 允许考生分情况来深入地讨论问题). It's impolite to use mobile phones in public places <u>like</u> cinemas, libraries and classrooms. Those places <u>are supposed to be quiet</u>. <u>On the other hand</u>, I think it's okay to use mobile phones in other public places, <u>such as</u> shopping centers and fitness centers, as long as we don't talk too loudly.

Why do some seeple like doing new things?

*

考题类型:原因是什么

That's because doing new things is more fun and exciting than doing the same old things all the time. For example, I remember I was very excited when I started driving last summer (British Council 明确规定: If it is relevant, you can share some of your personal experience too. 如果扣题, 你也可以选择与 考官分享你的个人经历). Doing new things is also a good way to gain new knowledge, such as knowledge about a new place or a new tool.

Why do many people like to collect things?

考题类型:原因是什么

I suppose there are different reasons for different people. Some people think of collecting things as an investment. For example, many art collectors



believe the artworks they have collected will go up in value. Others collect things because they have too much spare time on their hands. They tend to collect things for fun. There're also people who collect things because they want to remember past experiences.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of using solar energy?

考题类型:分析利弊

I suppose the main advantage is it's renewable. It will be available as long as the sun shines. Solar energy is also clean and safe. It doesn't cause damage to the environment. On the other hand, using solar energy is more expensive than using fossil fuels such as of and gas, so we need new technology to make What are the advantages of online shopping? it cheaper and more popular.

考题类型:分析利弊

The biggest advantage of online shopping is convenience. We don't need to go from shop to shop to find what we need. For example, last night it took me about 5 minutes to find and order a perfect birthday cake online for my roommate. Another advantage of online shopping is the lower cost. Most of the things I need are cheaper online than in shops, and I can save money on transport too.

Pat 注: 在回答分析利弊的考题时,如果您不想总是重复 advantage,也可以和 benefit 交替使用;如果不想总是重复 disadvantage,则可以和 drawback 交替使用, benefit 和 drawback 两个词也同样是地道的英文

304

What disadvantages are there in a society where the gap between rich and poor is very large?

考题类型:分析利弊

There're a variety of disadvantages. For example, schools in poor communities are bad, and large numbers of students drop out of school at young ages. Many of them become criminals and end up in prison. There are also high rates of health problems because low-income families can't afford good health care.

客题类型:

考题类型:比较长辈和年轻人

I think parents can offer better advice because they have more life experience. They know how to compare different plans and how to avoid common mistakes. Friends can offer a lot of support, but their advice is usually not as helpful as advice from parents.

> Which are more important, art lessons or academic lessons?

> > 考题类型:比较两类事物

I think academic lessons are more important <u>because</u> they teach <u>language</u> skills, maths skills and science skills. These skills can prepare students for employment. It's true that art lessons are fun and interesting, <u>but</u> drawing and painting skills won't help students find jobs when they enter the job market.

 $-_{0}$ Day 9

Have relationships between parents and children changed in recent years?

考题类型:比较现在和过去

They're not as close as they used to be. Parents and their children used to have dinner together and do housework together. But now most parents have busy careers, so they spend less time with their children. Even when they spend time with their children, the time is often spent silently surfing the Internet or playing video games.

Will working from home become more common in the future?

考题类型:展望未来

Yes, I think more people will work from home in the future (明确问答考官 的问题) <u>because</u> the Internet will be set and there will be better apps to help employees work from home (给出自己这样认为的理由). Working from home will be easier and more efficient in the future (简要解释自己的理由).

As home viewing technology improves, do you think cinemas will disappear in the future?

考题类型:展望未来

No, I don't think so. Watching a film, <u>such as an action film or a sci-fi film</u>, on a huge cinema screen will always feel more special than on a small screen at home. And cinema technology, <u>like</u> IMAX, is <u>also</u> improving very fast. It'll help cinemas continue to <u>attract viewers</u> in the future.

当您对 British Council 的官方高分答案结构真正熟练之后,就可以向这个结构里"添砖加瓦"了。您可以在本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》第一章看到帮助你在 Part 3 快速想出 ideas 的地道英文。

Day



What It Takes to Get a Good Score.

Pat's Guide To The IELTS Speaking Test

The play is done; the curtain drops The actor stops And looks around to say farewell



EFF 后一天了。江淹的《别赋》说:"黯然消魂者,唯别而已矣。"英文则说"Every ending can be a new beginning."中西方文化的差异,确实不是一两句话能够说 清的。

Pat 写这本书的动力之一就是希望把自己多年来在英语国家学习、生活每天都听到、 看到的真实英文传递给中国同学们,帮助同学们摆脱用"中式英语"说英文话题的苦恼。 您可以放心地把从本书学到的英文用在 IELTS 口试以及出国之后的留学生活里,充分享受 和 native speakers 无障碍交流"的乐趣 (the pleasure of easy and effective communication)。

Pat 完成本书的另一个心愿是帮助中国同学们拨开种种迷雾,看清 IELTS 口语高分的本质要求:用英语去和你的考官进行一次,正的交流。正如很多口语考官们明确指出的, "It's not what you say. It's how you say it." ① 扣题, ② 清晰, ③ 自然的答案才是坐在 你对面的 examiner 真心期待的。

如果您仍然半信半疑,希望 Cambridge University Press 出版的 The Official Cambridge Guide to IELTS 提供的这个高分实例能最终说服您:

Describe a person who has been an important influence in your life.

You should say:

how long you have known this person

why you chose this person

how this person has influenced your life

and explain how you feel about this person.

308

由 Cambridge English Language Assessment 提供的高分答案实例:

I've decided to talk about my grandmother. I've known her for all my life. She's an amazing person.

I chose her because when I was young, she looked after me when my parents were busy at work. So I have a lot of good memories of her when I was growing up.

She has influenced my life by being such a calm person. She also taught me how to read and write. And I think it's because of her that I work so hard now. She also taught me a lot about my culture. For example, she taught me how to coek come traditional dishes.

When I think of my grandmother, I feel very happy. I love her very much and I feel a lot of respect for her. But sometimes I also feel worried about her because she is quite old now and still lives alone.

这样的答案扣题、清晰,而且语言自然流畅,考官可以充分理解考生要表达的信息, 形成了真正的交流,得高分实至名归(It does deserve a high score.)。

甚至即使遇到了非常"虐心"(excruciatingly hard)的题,考定也希望你能说清晰、 自然的英文,而不是给他 / 她同样"虐心"的答案:

> Describe a concert hall. You should say: where it is what it is like why you went there and explain whether you like it or not.

I'm going to tell you about a concert hall in my city. It's called the Centennial Center.

It's not quite in the city center, but is only a short walk away.

 $_{-0}$ Day 10

The building is old, but still in good condition. The main hall is very big. There're probably more than 800 seats in it. The seats are comfortable, and it's easy to see the stage from most of the seats.

The hall has a high ceiling and a wood floor. The sound quality is great from almost everywhere in the hall. I've seen many concerts at this hall, from classical to jazz. I've also seen some drama performances there.

I like this concert hall because it's a great place for music lovers. The concerts are always impressive. The employees there are friendly and helpful. And ticket prices are guite resonable.

扣题、清晰、自然,并且适当用地道的词汇和短语来点缀(但绝不是"充斥")自己的答案,这就是IELTS口试高分考生的真正共同点,因为这样的答案向考官证明的是考生的英语沟通技能(English communication skills),而不是向考官展示自己的"机械记忆技能"(rote memorisation skills,俗称"狂背技能")。

"用词难到让考官惊叹"的答案在 IELTS 口语备考路上只是缘木求鱼 (a misguided effort)。而当你真正明白坐在你对面的那位职业是雅思考官的 native speaker 到底在期待 什么,你已经成功了一半 (You're halfway there.)。 本 书和它的姐妹篇《十天突破雅思写作》帮助很多中国考生朋友们实现了自己的梦想。这是"十天系列"的读者陈佳沛同学(口语8.5分)、周迪同学(口语7.5分)和朱 梦平同学(口语7分)的成绩单。虽然三位同学的基础和分数不同,但有两个共同点: 1 口语成绩都超过了这三位同学自己的"传统强项"——阅读成绩和听力成绩; 2 他们 / 她 们都非常重视和考官的真实交流 (effective communication)。

其实不止是这两位同学,重视与考官的交流是 Pat 认识的每一位中国口语高分考生的 共同 点 — because the IELTS speaking test is a test designed to assess English communication skills.

如果您在 IELTS 口语备考路上遇到任何问题,或者您也愿意和朋友们分享您自己在 "屠鸭"路上的点点滴滴,欢迎致信: ieltsguru@sina.com。Pat 每天都收到来自世界各 地很多朋友的邮件,但只要有时间一定会尽量回复您的— simply because I'd like to know what my Chinese readers think. ☺



person, not a machine.),所以你和考官两个人之间的交流很关键。Treat your speaking examiner as a friend. 口试要得到高分就一定不能怕和考官分享你的真实想法和感受。

还有我想说一点的是语法的重要性。我自己来澳洲读本科之前都是在国内普通高中上 学的,也见过有不少同学认为不应该花时间在毫无用处的语法上面,但我却不这么认为。 比如在口语方面,语法并不需要说得很难,但是时态、单复数等容易错的语法点都会直接 决定考官对你的说话内容的理解难易程度。有小错误也许是难免的(我自己至少在 Part 3 里也出现了少量的语法错误),但如果错误太多,就会让考官觉得理解你说的内容很困难了。

对于口试,我自己的切身感受就是勤奋很重要,但勤奋在点子上也很重要。Work hard and work smart!

周迪同学的心得

口语能得到 7.5 分自己挺满意的,要特别谢谢慎老师,在这里说说自己是怎么使用 十天口语的:

第一,发音的小错不要轻视。在没有听十天口语的音频之前,我的很多单词发音都

312

有问题,甚至连 friend 这么简单的词发 音都发不准。难一些的词像 atmosphere 和 celebrity,我以前发音的重音位置也 是错的。还有除了单词的发音要注意跟 音频纠正,说句子时整体的连贯性也是有 必要的。建议大家认真学习十天口语里 面发音的那一章,慎老师总结得很好。

ÎÎ

第二, 语速不要太慢, 否则你会感 觉自己一直在打结, 毕竟流利度是评分 里的一项。十天口语建议我们在练习口 语预测题的时候把自己说的录下来, 我 照做了, 特别是认真找出了那些本来不 应该停顿的地方。通过反复听自己的录 音, 我明白了怎样能把自己的思考过程和 想说的句子更自然地融合在一起, 也就 能比较流利地说出来了。



ÎÎ

第三,一定要努力避免简单的语法错误和词性错误。慎老师的口语书和作文书里面都有常见错误的总结,比如说 extinct 其实是 *adj.*,我以前就经常把它错用成动词。而且在考前练习预测题的时候一定要提醒自己到底应该说 he 还是 she,应该说 is 还是 was。如果这类小错误很多考官肯定就会听蒙圈了。

第四,不要有模板句,坚信说自己的才能跟考官有真正的交流,这也是在慎老师的 书里看到的建议。当然十天口语 Day3 里面的地道词语是必用的,要多用那些地道的表达,真的很有用。

第五,有空的时候可以抱着薯片看看美剧,台词比较贴近生活,而且我发现有很多 地道的表达自己在十天口语里看到过。

还有,我觉得自己第一次就考了个不错的口语分数还与我开朗的性格有关。我考口语 时候的考官是一个外国大叔,特别和蔼,和他聊天的时候我就当他是隔壁老王,一个劲地 说,表达我自己的看法、自己的观点。事后我甚至都有点后悔自己是不是太随意了,但是 结果出来之后还是挺满意的。在这里必须感谢慎老师的书,里面有很多欧美的生活习惯和 地道的表达,即使不是用来备考经常看看都会很受益。谢谢一直努力的自己,也谢谢慎老师!

ÎÎ

朱梦平同学的心得

首战听力没考好,但总分和小分都 够了就不打算再考了。关于口语我个人 最重要的体会就是不要把它当成一个决 定终生命运的考试,而是把它看成和一 个外国朋友交谈的机会,认认真真地说 出你的看法,这样反而能够发挥出最佳 状态。当然充分的准备是必不可少的, 我的做法就是认真看 Pat 书里的语言, 同时让自己的表达变得更地道更自然。 很多同学关心的语速,我的体会是让语 速变得流利是逐步实现、水到渠成的, 如果从一开始就追求语速流利,反而会 很紧张,而且说出来其实还是磕磕绊绊 的。口试时一定要保持自信和冷静!当 然我自己未来学习的路还很长,我会继 续加油的! 谢谢 Pat!



ÎÎ

慎小嶷 Pat

天突破 雅思口语

,欢迎登录慎小嶷博客: http://blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru

- ▶ 结合《剑12》分析口试三部分的本质
- **实现口语言之有物的地道English phrases** 口语里应该被替换的词汇
- D语Part 1正反两方的对决 把答案说长但又不"虚伪"的方法
- 中国同学们最常见的发音错误

- 怎样让口语的句子更加native 如何组织好Part 2的思路
- Cue Card的"另类"话题 Part 3最常用的高分词
- 有信心地面对高难卡片题 口语实战里的"细枝末节"

关键词用法例句均取自 Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary



上架建议 雅思

ISBN 978-7-111-56993-0

地址:北京市百万庄大街22%
 电活服务
 社服务中心: (010)88361(
 第 告 部: (010)683262
 第 告 部: (010)883796
 (注表期书稿後: (010)883796

邮政编码: 100037 网络服务 门户周: http://www.cmpbook.c 载材网: http://www.cmpedu.c 封面无防伪标均为盗版

定价: 72.50元 (赠速查手册, 内附音频卡)

